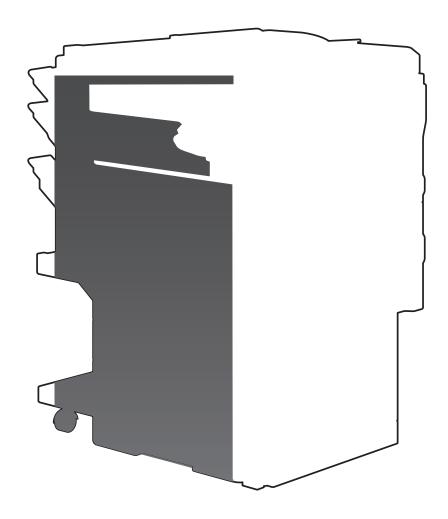
The essentials of imaging



bizhub C203/C253/C353



Contents

1 Introduction

1.1	About this manual	1-3
1.1.1	Contents	1-3
1.1.2	Representation of product name	1-3
1.2	Explanation of manual conventions	1-4 1-4 1-4
1.3	User manuals	1-5
1.3.1	Printed manual User manual	1-5 1-5
1.3.2	User manual CD manuals Copy Operations Print Operations Box Operations Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations Network Administrator (this manual)	1-5 1-5 1-5 1-5

2 Setup items by operation

2.1	Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication TCP/IP Settings	
	Device Setting	
2.2	Using PageScope Web Connection	2-5
2.2.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-5
2.2.2	PSWC Settings	2-6
2.2.3	TCP Socket Setting	2-7
2.2.4	SSL/TLS Setting	2-7
2.3	Logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection	2-8
2.4	Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication	2-10
2.4.1	Create a self-signed Certificate	2-11
2.4.2	Request a Certificate	2-12
2.4.3	Install a Certificate	2-14
2.4.4	Set an Encryption Strength	2-15
2.4.5	Set Mode using SSL	2-16
2.4.6	Remove a certificate	2-17
2.5	Acquiring the certificate for this machine	2-18
2.5.1	Create a certificate	2-18
2.5.2	Download a certificate	2-18
2.6	Registering a user certificate in this machine	2-19
2.6.1	E-mail Address	2-20
2.6.2	Automatically Obtain Certificates	2-21
2.7	Specifying the date and time on this machine	2-22
2.7.1	Manual Setting	2-23
2.7.2	TCP/IP Settings	2-23
2.7.3	Time Zone	2-23
2.7.4	Time Adjustment Setting	2-24

2.8	Sending scan data to a Windows computer	2-25
2.8.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-25
2.8.2	Client Setting	2-26
2.8.3	Direct Hosting Setting	2-27
2.8.4	WINS Setting	2-28
2.9	Sending scan data by E-mail	2-29
2.9.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-30
2.9.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	2-30
	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
	Admin. E-mail Address	2-32
2.9.3	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-33
	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
	Action for Invalid Certificate	2-33
2.9.4	SMTP Authentication	
2.9.5	POP before SMTP	
	POP before SMTP	
	E-mail RX (POP)	
2.9.6	POP over SSL	
	E-mail RX (POP) Action for Invalid Certificate	
.		
2.9.7	APOP Authentication	
2.10	Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)	
2.10.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.10.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
2.10.3	Create a certificate	
2.10.4	S/MIME	
2.10.5	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	
2.10.6	SMTP Authentication	
2.10.7	POP before SMTP	
2.10.8	POP over SSL	2-41
2.10.9	APOP Authentication	
2.11	Sending scan data by E-mail (Public key-based encryption)	
2.11.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.11.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	2-43
2.11.3	S/MIME	2-43
2.11.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-44
2.11.5	SMTP Authentication	2-44
2.11.6	POP before SMTP	2-44
2.11.7	POP over SSL	2-44
2.11.8	APOP Authentication	2-44
2.12	Searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server	2-45
2.12.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-46
2.12.2	Manual Destination Input	2-46
2.12.3	LDAP Setting	2-47
2.12.4	Setting Up LDAP	2-48
2.12.5	LDAP over SSL	2-50
	Setting Up LDAP	2-50
	Action for Invalid Certificate	2-50
2.12.6	DNS Server Settings	2-51
2.12.7	Date/Time Setting	
2.13	Sending scan data by FTP	
2.13.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-52
2.13.2	FTP TX Setting	2-53

2.14	Sending scan data by WebDAV	2-54
2.14.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.14.2	WebDAV Settings	2-55
2.14.3	WebDAV over SSL	
2.15	Sending an Internet fax	2-57
2.15.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.15.2	Internet Fax Function	
2.15.3	Regist machine information	2-59
	Device Mail Address	
	Machine Setting	2-60
2.15.4	Header Information	2-61
2.15.5	E-mail TX (SMTP)	2-62
2.15.6	I-Fax Advanced Setting	2-62
2.15.7	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-63
2.15.8	SMTP Authentication	2-63
2.15.9	POP before SMTP	2-63
2.15.10	POP over SSL	2-63
2.15.11	APOP Authentication	2-63
2.16	Receiving Internet faxes	2-64
2.16.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-65
2.16.2	Internet Fax Function	
2.16.3	E-mail RX (POP)	2-66
2.16.4	I-Fax Advance Setting	
2.16.5	POP over SSL	
2.16.6	APOP Authentication	
2.17	Receiving Internet faxes encrypted with the public keys of this machine	
2.17.1	Receive Internet faxes	
2.17.2	S/MIME	
2.17.3	POP over SSL	
2.17.4	APOP Authentication	
2.18	Sending and receiving IP address faxes	
2.18.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.18.2	IP Address Fax Function	
2.18.3	SMTP TX Setting	
2.18.4	SMTP RX Setting	2-74
2.18.5	Header Information	
2.19	Importing images using the TWAIN scan	
2.19.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.19.2	SLP Setting.	
2.19.3	TCP Socket Setting	
2.19.4	Network TWAIN	
2.20	Printing (LPR/Port9100)	
2.20.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.20.2	LPD Setting	
2.20.3	RAW Port Number	
2.21	Printing (SMB)	
2.21.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.21.2	Print Setting	
2.21.3	WINS Setting	
2.22 2.22.1	Printing (IPP)	
2.22.1	TCP/IP Settings PSWC Settings	
2.22.2	IPP Setting	
2.22.3 2.22.4	IPP Setting IPP Authentication Setting	
L.LL.H	in radionication octung	2-00

2.23	Printing (IPPS)	2-86
2.23.1	Printing (IPP)	
2.23.2	SSL/TLS Setting	
2.23.3	IPP Authentication Setting	2-87
2.24	Printing (Bonjour)	2-88
	Bonjour Setting	2-88
2.25	Printing (AppleTalk)	
	AppleTalk Setting	
2.26	Printing (NetWare)	
2.26.1	NetWare Setting	
	For Remote Printer mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation For the print server mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation	
	For NetWare 4.x Remote Printer mode (NDS)	
	For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server mode (NDS)	
	For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)	2-94
2.26.2	NetWare Status	2-95
2.27	Using the WSD print function	2-96
2.27.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-96
2.27.2	Web Service Common Settings	2-97
2.27.3	Printer Settings	2-98
2.28	Using the WSD scan function	2-99
2.28.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-99
2.28.2	Web Service Common Settings	2-100
2.28.3	Scanner Settings	2-101
2.29	Using SSL for communication from Vista to this machine with WSD	2-102
2.29.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-103
2.29.2	SSL/TLS Setting	2-103
2.29.3	Web Service Common Settings	2-103
2.30	Using SSL for communication from this machine to Vista with WSD	2-104
2.30.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-105
2.30.2	SSL/TLS Setting	2-105
2.30.3	Web Service Common Settings	2-105
2.30.4	Action for Invalid Certificate	2-106
2.31	Monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager	2-107
2.31.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-107
2.31.2	NetWare Setting	
2.31.3	SNMP Setting	
2.32	Providing notification of the status of this machine (E-mail)	2-111
2.32.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.32.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
2.32.3	Status Notification Setting	
2.32.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	
2.32.5	SMTP Authentication	
2.32.6	POP before SMTP	
2.32.7	POP over SSL	
2.32.8	APOP Authentication	
2.33	Providing notification of the status of this machine (TRAP)	
2.33.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.33.2	NetWare Setting	
2.33.3	TRAP Setting	
2.33.4	Status Notification Setting	2-117

2.34	Providing notification of the counter information status of this machine via E-mail	2-118
2.34.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-119
2.34.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	2-119
2.34.3	Total Counter Notification Setting	2-120
2.34.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-121
2.34.5	SMTP Authentication	2-121
2.34.6	POP before SMTP	2-121
2.34.7	POP over SSL	2-121
2.34.8	APOP Authentication	2-121
2.34.9	Meter Count	2-122
2.35	Limiting users using this machine (Machine authentication)	2-123
2.35.1	User Auth/Account Track	2-124
2.35.2	User Registration	2-125
2.35.3	Account Track Registration	2-127
2.36	Limiting users using this machine (Active Directory)	2-128
2.36.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.36.2	External Server Registration	2-129
2.36.3	User Auth/Account Track	
2.36.4	Default Function Permission	
2.36.5	Date/Time Setting	
2.37	Limiting users using this machine (Windows domain/workgroup)	
2.37.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.37.2	External Server Registration	
2.37.3	User Auth/Account Track	
2.37.4	Default Function Permission	
2.37.5	Client Setting	
2.37.6	WINS Setting	
2.38	Limiting users using this machine (NDS)	
2.38.1	External Server Registration	
2.38.2	User Auth/Account Track	
2.38.3	Default Function Permission	
2.38.4	NetWare Setting	
2.39	Limiting users using this machine (LDAP)	
2.39.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.39.2	External Server Registration	-
2.39.3	User Auth/Account Track	
2.39.4	Default Function Permission	
2.39.5	LDAP over SSL	
2.0010	External Server Registration	
	Action for Invalid Certificate	2-143
2.40	Performing IP address filtering	2-145
2.40.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-145
2.40.2	IP Filtering	2-146
2.41	Communicating using IPv6	
	TCP/IP Setting	
2.42	Communicating using IPsec	
2.42.1	TCP/IP Settings	
2.42.2	IPsec	
2.42.3	IKE Setting	
2.42.4	SA Setting	
2.42.5	Peer	2-153

2.43	Using the TCP Socket/OpenAPI/FTP server function	2-154
2.43.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-154
2.43.2	SSL/TLS Setting	2-154
2.43.3	TCP Socket Setting	
2.43.4	OpenAPI Setting	2-156
2.43.5	FTP Server Setting	
2.44	Other items on the Maintenance tab	
2.44.1	Using external memory External Memory Function Settings	
2.44.2	Using the timer function	
	Power Save Setting	
0.44.0		
2.44.3	Importing or exporting setting information Import/Export	2-161
2.44.4	Resetting setting information Network Setting Clear	
	Reset	
	Format All Destination	
2.44.5	Specifying support information	2-165
	Online Assistance	
2.44.6	Registering the header or footer Header/Footer Registration	
2.44.7	Checking the ROM version ROM Version	
2.45	Other items on the Security tab	
2.45.1	Limiting accessible destinations by user	
2.10.1	Reference Allowed Group Registration	2-168
	Public User Reference Setting	
2.45.2	Restricting address registration by a user Permission of Address Change	
2.45.3	Specifying the auto logout time Auto Logout	
2.45.4	Specifying the administrator password	2-172
	Administrator Password Setting	2-172
2.46	Box tab settings	2-173
2.46.1	Changing user box settings or deleting a user box Open User Box	
2.46.2	Creating a new user box	2-174
	Create User Box	2-174
2.46.3	Changing system box settings or deleting system boxes Open System User Box	
2.46.4	Creating a new system user box Create System User Box	
2.47	Print Setting tab settings	2-178
2.47.1	Specifying initial settings for the print function	
	Basic Setting	
2.47.2	Specifying settings for PCL/PS/XPS print	
	PCL Settings	
	PS Setting.	
0.47.0	XPS Settings	
2.47.3	Specifying the interface timeout Interface Setting	

2.48	Store Address tab settings	2-182
2.48.1	Registering or editing an address book destination	2-182
-	Address Book	2-182
2.48.2	Registering or editing a group destination	2-186
	Group	
2.48.3	Registering or editing a program destination	2-187
	Program address	2-187
2.48.4	Registering or editing destinations to be temporarily used	2-198
	Temporary One-Touch	
2.48.5	Registering E-mail subject or text	2-198
	Subject	
	Text	
2.48.6	Using an application registered in an external server	2 100
2.40.0	Application Registration	
2.48.7	Simplifying E-mail address entry	2-203
	Prefix/Śuffix	2-203

3 Network Settings

3.1	Displaying the Network Settings screen	3-3
3.2	Network Settings menu list	3-6
	Network Settings screen (1/2)	
	Network Settings screen (2/2)	3-14

4 Appendix

4.1	Product Specifications (Network functions)	4-3
4.2	Glossary	4-4

5 Index



1 Introduction

Thank you for purchasing this machine.

This user manual describes setting methods for each function utilizing bizhub C203/C253/C353, mainly using the PageScope Web Connection. In order to allow functionality of this product fully and to use it effectively, please read through this user manual, and then get started.

In order to operate the product safely and properly, be sure to read the accompanying User manuals – Copy/Print/Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax/Box Operations and Network Administrator.

For detailed safety information and operation precautions, refer to the User Manual.

For descriptions on trademarks and copyrights, refer to the User Manual.

The illustrations used in this manual may appear slightly different from views of the actual equipment.

1.1 About this manual

This document is a user manual summarizing setup procedures for enabling effective usages of the product utilizing the networking functions. For copy, scan, box, and fax operations, refer to the respective user manuals.

This manual is intended for persons with basic knowledge of computers and the copier. For details on the Windows or Macintosh operating systems, or software applications, refer to the respective manuals.

1.1.1 Contents

This manual consists of the following chapters:

No.	Chapter name
1	Introduction
2	Setup items by operation
3	Network Settings
4	Appendix
5	Index

1.1.2 Representation of product name

Product name	Representation
bizhub C203/C253/C353	Machine, copier, or printer
Microsoft Windows	Windows

1.2 Explanation of manual conventions

The marks and text formats used in this manual are described below.

Safety advices

\land DANGER

Failure to observe instructions highlighted in this manner may result in fatal or critical injuries in fact of electrical power.

Observe all dangers in order to prevent injuries.

MARNING

Failure to observe instructions highlighted in this manner may result in serious injuries or property damage.

→ Observe all warnings in order to prevent injuries and to ensure safe use of the machine.

Failure to observe instructions highlighted in this manner may result in slight injuries or property damage.

Observe all cautions in order to prevent injuries and to ensure safe use of the machine.

Sequence of action

- The number 1 as formatted here indicates the first step of a sequence of actions.
- 2 Subsequent numbers as formatted here indicate subsequent steps of a sequence of actions.
 - 7 Text formatted in this style provides additional assistance.
 - → Text formatted in this style describes the action that will ensure the desired results are achieved.

An illustration inserted here shows what operations must be performed.

Tips

Note

Text highlighted in this manner contains useful information and tips to ensure safe use of the machine.

```
Ø...
```

Reminder

Text highlighted in this manner contains information that should be reminded.

Q

Detail

Text highlighted in this manner contains references for more detailed information.

[Stop] key

The names of keys on the control panel are written as shown above.

```
MACHINE SETTING
Display texts are written as shown above.
```

۵...

Note

The machine illustrations shown in this manual can vary and depend on the machine configuration.

1.3 User manuals

This machine is provided with printed manuals and PDF manuals on the user manual CD.

1.3.1 Printed manual

User manual

This manual contains operating procedures and descriptions of the most frequently used functions. In addition, this manual contains notes and precautions that should be followed for safe use of the machine. Be sure to read this manual before using the machine.

1.3.2 User manual CD manuals

Copy Operations

This manual contains descriptions of the Copy mode operations and machine maintenance.

Refer to this manual for details on the paper and originals, copy procedures using convenient Application functions, replacing consumables, and troubleshooting operations such as clearing paper misfeeds.

Print Operations

This manual contains details of the printing functions that can be specified with the standard built-in printer controller.

Refer to this manual for operating procedures on using the printing functions.

Box Operations

This manual contains operating procedures for using the user boxes on the hard disk.

Refer to this manual for details on saving data in user boxes, retrieving data from user boxes and transferring data.

Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations

This manual contains details on the network scan, G3 fax, network fax operations, and fax driver functions.

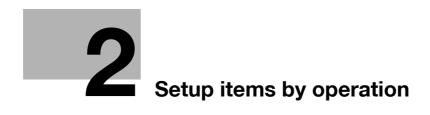
Refer to this manual for details on using network scan function by E-Mail or FTP, G3 fax, Internet fax, IP address fax operations, and PC-FAX functions.

In order to use the fax functions, the optional fax kit must be purchased separately.

Network Administrator (this manual)

This manual contains descriptions on setting methods for each function utilizing network connection, mainly using the PageScope Web Connection.

Refer to this manual for details on using network functions.



2 Setup items by operation

2.1 Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication

- → Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.
 - To use this machine by connecting to the network, specify these settings in advance.

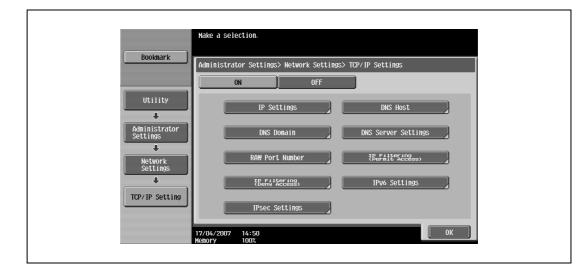
Reminder

In order to apply all changes to the network settings, turn off this machine, then on again.

When turning off the main power switch and turning it on again, wait for 10 seconds or longer after power-off, and then turn on the power again. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

TCP/IP Settings

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [5 Network Settings].
- 2 Select [1 TCP/IP Settings].



Q

Detail

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation		
TCP/IP Settings	Select [ON].			
IP Application Method	Select whether the IP address is automatically acquired or directly specified.	IP application method to be used		
IP Application Method Auto Setting	To automatically acquire the IP address, select the automat- ic acquisition method.			
IP Address To directly specify the IP address, specify the IP address of this machine.		IP address of this ma- chine		
Subnet Mask	To directly specify the IP address, specify the subnet mask of the network to be connected.	Subnet mask of this ma- chine		
Default Gateway	To directly specify the IP address, specify the default gate- way of the network to be connected.	Default gateway of this machine		
Dynamic DNS Settings	Dynamic DNS Settings To automatically register the host name specified with [DNS Host Name] for the DNS server that supports the Dynamic DNS function, select [Enable].			

۵...

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation		
DNS Host Name	Specify the host name of this machine (up to 63 characters).			
DNS Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Select whether to automatically acquire the name of the DNS domain. This item is enabled when the DHCP is enabled.	Whether automatic ac- quisition is available with DHCP		
Default DNS Domain Name	If not acquiring the DNS domain name automatically, specify the domain name to which this machine belongs (up to 255 characters including the host name).	Default Domain Name		
DNS Search Domain Name 1 to 3	Specify the DNS search domain name (up to 255 characters including the host name).			
DNS Server Auto Obtain Specify whether to automatically acquire the DNS server ad- dress. This item is enabled when the DHCP is enabled.		Whether automatic ac- quisition is available with DHCP		
Priority DNS Server	If not automatically acquiring the DNS server address, spec- ify the address of the priority DNS server.	Address of the server		
Secondary DNS Server 1 and 2	Specify the address of an alternate DNS server.	Address of the server		

Device Setting

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [5 Network Settings].
- 2 Select [5 Detail Settings].
- 3 Select [1 Device Setting].

	Specify the network speed.	
Bookmark	Administrator Settings> Detail	Settings> Device Setting
	MAC Address	Network Speed
Utility		Auto Setting
Administrator Settings		10Mbps Half Duplex 10Mbps Full Duplex
Network Settings		100Mbps Full Duplex Half Duplex
Detail Settings		16bps Full Duplex
Device Setting	17/04/2007 14:51 Memory 100%	ОК

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the network interface card for this machine.	
Network Speed	Specify the network speed.	



Specify settings for using PageScope Web Connection.

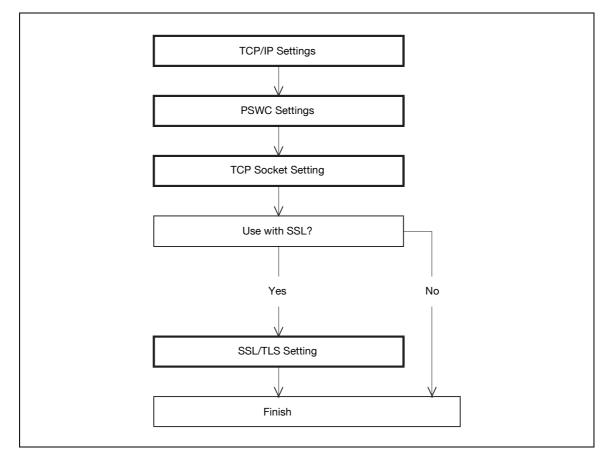
۵...

Note

This manual describes how to specify settings required for each operation using PageScope Web Connection.

PageScope Web Connection is a device management utility supported by the HTTP server integrated into the printer controller. Using a Web browser on a computer connected to the network, machine settings can be specified and the status of the machine can be checked. Some settings can be specified from the computer instead of from the machine control panel.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.2.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.2.2 PSWC Settings

2

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [5 Network Settings]
- 2 Select [3 HTTP Server Settings].

	Specify the http settings.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Network Settings > HTTP Server Settings
	ON OFF 1 /4 +Back For-
Utility	PSWC Settings
Administrator Settings Network Settings HTTP Server	ON OFF
	17/04/2007 14:52 Kenory 100%

Q

Detail

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
PSWC Settings	Select [ON].	

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP Socket Setting"

KONICA MINOLTA		Administrator			Logout
PAGE Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan			
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print			Ce
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
▶ TCP/IP Setting		TCP Socket Setting			
▶ E-mail Setting		(Turn the main switch O	FF, and then ON , whe	en changing TCP Socket.)
▶ LDAP Setting		TCP Socket Port Number		59158 (1-65535)	
▶ IPP Setting		Use SSL/TLS		[00100] (1-60000)	I
▶ FTP Setting		Port No.(SSL)		59159 (1-65535)	I
▶ SNMP Setting		TCP Socket(ASC	ll Mode)		
▶ SMB Setting		Port No.(ASCII M	ode)	59160 (1-65535)	I
▶ Web Service Set	tings				
▶ Bonjour Setting				[OK Cancel
▶ NetWare Setting				-	
▶ AppleTalk Settin	g				
▶ Network Fax Set	ting				
▶ WebDAV Setting	s				
▶ OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setti	ng				

Q

Detail

For details on logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, refer to "Logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection" on page 2-8.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	To use in the Flash format, select the "TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)" check box.	
Port No. (ASCII Mode)	Specify the port number.	

2.2.4 SSL/TLS Setting

→ Specify settings for SSL-based communication

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

2.3 Logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection

To specify settings for this machine with PageScope Web Connection, Administrator mode must be logged in. The following shows how to log in to Administrator mode.



2

Detail

When logged in to Administrator mode, the control panel of the machine is locked and cannot be used.

Depending on the status of the machine, you may not be able to log in to Administrator mode.

- 1 In the login page, select "Administrator".
- 2 Click the [Login] button.
 - If necessary, select the display language and format.
 - If "When in warning, the dialog is displayed." check box is selected, warning messages appear during operation after logging in.

	Cope Web Connection
Language	OS Language (OS Language)
Login	C Public User
View Mode	C Flash C HTML
	Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.
User Assist	☐ When in warning, the dialog is displayed.
	Login

3 Enter the password for the machine's administrator.

	Scope Web Connection
	Administrator Password
-	Concellant and the second s

4 Click the [OK] button.

The Administrator mode page appears.

۵...

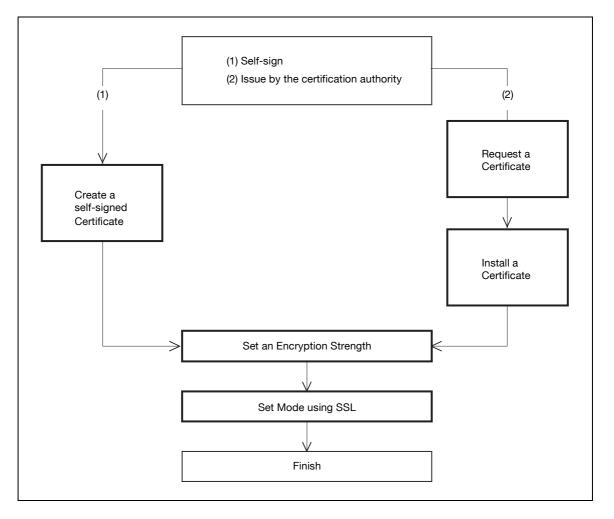
Reminder

If "Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error" in Administrator mode is set to "Mode 2" and an incorrect password is entered the specified number of times, it is no longer possible to log in to Administrator mode. For details on the "Prohibited Functions When Authentication Failed" parameter, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations.

2.4 Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication

Q Detail

Creating a certificate for this machine encrypts communication from a client computer to this machine using SSL in order to prevent disclosure of communication contents and password.



Q

Detail

When specifying the following settings, communication from a client computer to this machine can be encrypted using SSL. For details, refer to the respective sections. "Using PageScope Web Connection" on page 2-5 "Printing (IPPS)" on page 2-86

"Using SSL for communication from Vista to this machine with WSD" on page 2-102

"Using the TCP Socket/OpenAPI/FTP server function" on page 2-154

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Create a self-signed Certificate".

	OLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Co		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Create a self-signed	Certificate			
▶ User Registration		Common Name		ocalhost		
► Account Track Re	gistration	Organization				
SSL/TLS Setting		Organizational Unit				
▶ Address Referend	e Setting	Locality				
▶ Permission of Ad	dress	State/Province				
Change		Country				
▶ Auto Logout		Admin. E-mail Address		admin@co.jp		
Administrator Pas Setting	ssword	Validitγ Start Date		2007/4/17 17:02:41		
-		Validity Period		(1-3650)		
		Encryption Strength				
			LDER DOWND	C4 100, 2050 300, 45	ə əre	
	<u>in in de sind</u> er de sinder <u>En ser s</u> er ser s			a a star a star a star	e por querre sei e	
				an a		
and the second second		All and the second second				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation		
Common Name	Displays the IP address or domain name of the machine.			
Organization	rganization Enter the name of the organization or group used for creating an organization certificate (up to 63 characters).			
Organizational Unit	Enter the name of the account used for creating an account certificate (up to 63 characters).			
Locality	Enter the name of the locality used for creating a locality cer- tificate (up to 127 characters).			
State/Province	Enter the name of the state/province used for creating a state/province certificate (up to 127 characters).			
Country	When creating a country certificate, enter a two-character country code regulated by ISO 3166. United States: US, Great Britain: GB, Italy: IT, Australia: AU, The Netherlands: NL, Canada: CA, Spain: ES, Czech Repub- lic: CZ, China: CN, Denmark: DK, Germany: DE, Japan: JP, France: FR, Belgium: BE, Russia: RU			
Admin. E-mail Address	Enter the address for the administrator (up to 128 charac- ters).	Address for the adminis- trator		
Validity Start Date	Enter the starting date for the period of validity. Displays the date and time when this page was displayed.			
Validity Period	Enter the number of days from the starting date for the peri- od of validity for the certificate.			
Encryption Strength	Specify the encryption method.			

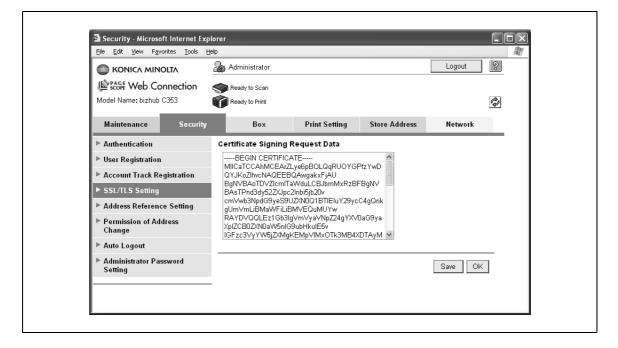
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Mode using SSL/TLS	Specify the mode using SSL/TLS.	
[OK]	Creates a self-signed certificate. It may take a few minutes to create a certificate.	

2.4.2 Request a Certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Request a Certificate".

	OLTA	🎧 Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ċ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Request a Certificate				
▶ User Registration	I	Common Name		localhost		
Account Track R	egistration	Organization				
SSL/TLS Setting		Organizational Unit				
► Address Referen		Locality				
▶ Permission of Ad	•	State/Province				
Change		Country				
▶ Auto Logout		Admin. E-mail Address		admin@co.jp		
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					
setting					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Common Name	Displays the IP address or domain name of the machine.	
Organization	Enter the name of the organization or group used for creating an organization certificate (up to 63 characters).	
Organizational Unit	Enter the name of the account used for creating an account certificate (up to 63 characters).	
Locality	Enter the name of the locality used for creating a locality cer- tificate (up to 127 characters).	
State/Province	Enter the name of the state or province used for creating a state/province certificate (up to 127 characters).	
Country	When creating a country certificate, enter a two-character country code regulated by ISO 3166. United States: US, Great Britain: GB, Italy: IT, Australia: AU, The Netherlands: NL, Canada: CA, Spain: ES, Czech Repub- lic: CZ, China: CN, Denmark: DK, Germany: DE, Japan: JP, France: FR, Belgium: BE, Russia: RU	
Admin. E-mail Address	Specify the address for the administrator (up to 128 charac- ters).	Address for the adminis- trator
[OK]	Creates certificate signing request data.	



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Certificate Signing Re- quest Data	Displays certificate signing request data.	
[Save]	Saves certificate signing request data in the computer as a file.	

2.4.3 Install a Certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Install a Certificate".
- 5 After requesting a certificate to the certification authority, install the certificate sent from the certification authority on this machine.

	Saan					
	Seady to Scan					
Model Name: bizhub C353 Ready to F				Ŷ		
Maintenance Security B	Box Print Setting	Store Address	Network			
► Authentication Install a Ce	ertificate			_		
	Jsgvp8Yq4SdHWZtsIGS Ymwt1+cgumVgmpnEczEkLIP7					
Account Track Registration mQ3bYPu	q05ys6cq5Xmwt1+equmVgmnp5ozEkURZ9/cTCXa mG3bYPunKCkFG/WPp03FP808 Goz/zoF3AgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEEBQAD QQDFVuM50TdLUUs8o9AQz1yHXKM b2Z7ZTUV1-UIQrCrAoNg0fgbwrA9P3W5pQtk5oA9 CJ3h1ozBieThIdMchn2					
► SSL/TLS Setting QQDFVuW						
▶ Permission of Address Change	ERTIFICATE	*		_		
▶ Auto Logout			OK Cancel	1		
Administrator Password				1		

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Install a Certificate	Paste text data sent from the certification authority.	
[OK]	Moves to the Set an Encryption Strength and Set Mode us- ing SSL screen.	

	TA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	8
Scope Web Con	nection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C3	353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set an Encryption Str	ength			_
▶ User Registration		Encryption Strength				
▶ Account Track Regi	istration		DES, RC4-4U, RC4	4-128, 3DES-168, AES	-256 💌	
► SSL/TLS Setting		Set Mode using SSL				
Address Reference	Setting	Mode using SSL/TLS	Ad	lmin. Mode and User N	lode 💌	
Permission of Addr Change	ess					_
▶ Auto Logout				Ins	tall Cancel	
Administrator Passy Setting	word					
		•				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Encryption Strength	Specify the encryption method.	
Mode using SSL/TLS	Specify the SSL/TLS application range.	
[Install]	Installs the certificate.	

2.4.4 Set an Encryption Strength

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting"
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set an Encryption Strength".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	2
Scope Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print			Q	2
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set an Encryption St	trength			
▶ User Registration		Encryption Strength				
► Account Track R	egistration		DES, RC4-40, RC4	1-128, 3DES-168, AES	3-256 💌	
► SSL/TLS Setting				r		
▶ Address Referen	ce Setting			L	OK Cancel	
Permission of Ad Change	dress					
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Encryption Strength	If necessary, change the set encryption strength. Specify the encryption strength.	

2.4.5 Set Mode using SSL

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

		Administrator			Logout	?
Stage Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set Mode using SS	ïL			
User Registration	I	Mode using SSL/TL	s A	dmin. Mode and User	Mode 🖌	
 Account Track Re SSL/TLS Setting 		Processing Metho Action for Invalid Cer		Continue 💌		
 Address Reference Permission of Ad Change 	, in the second se				OK Cancel]
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Mode using SSL/TLS	If necessary, change the set SSL/TSL application range. Specify the SSL/TLS application range.	

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Remove a Certificate".
 - If necessary, remove the certificate installed on this machine. To remove the installed certificate, click [OK].

Ele Edit Yew Favorites Tools Help KONICA MINOLTA Administrator Logout C	🗿 Security - Microsoft Internet Ex	-		- DX
	<u>File Edit View Favorites T</u> ools	Help		A.
•		🌆 Administrator	Logout	?



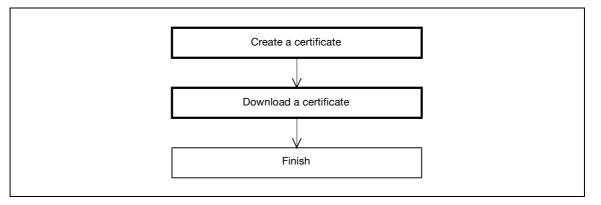
Detail If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the certificate cannot be removed.

2.5 Acquiring the certificate for this machine

- → Acquire the certificate for this machine at the user side.
 - Download the created certificate for this machine by accessing this machine with PageScope Web Connection.

Once the certificate for this machine is acquired, messages are encrypted based on the acquired certificate (public key), and then sent from the user to this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

Users can acquire the certificate for this machine by receiving a message with a digital signature attached from this machine. For details on sending E-Mails with the digital signature attached, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)" on page 2-39.

2.5.1 Create a certificate

→ Create a certificate for this machine.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

2.5.2 Download a certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Certificate Download".
- 5 To download a certificate to the computer, click [Download].

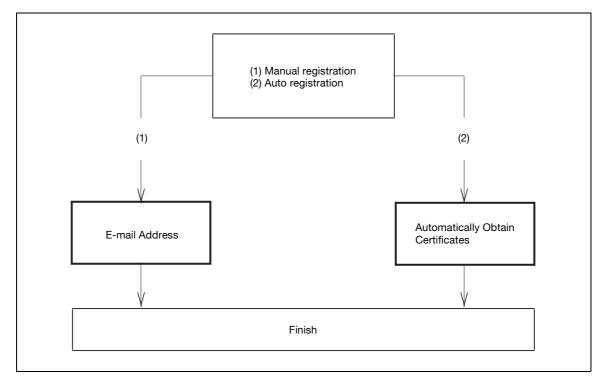
						~
*****	· • •• ••-5)				
 			and the second s	and the second se		

2.6 Registering a user certificate in this machine

- → Register a user certificate in this machine
 - When registering a certificate in this machine, the following methods are available: manual registration at the time of address registration and auto registration by sending a message with a digital signature attached.

Once the certificate for this machine is registered, messages are encrypted based on the registered certificate, and then sent from the user to this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.6.1 E-mail Address

2

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Address Book".
- 3 Select [New Registration].
- 4 Select "Address Book (E-mail)".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout ?	
PAGE Web Co	onnection	Keady to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print			Q	9
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Address Book		Address Book (E-ma	dl)			-
▶ Group		No.				
▶ Program		Use opening num	nber			
▶ Temporary One-1	Fouch	C Direct Input				
▶ Subject		Name Index	L			
▶ Text			for address search and d	isplay by registered name.		
▶ Prefix/Suffix			A	BC 🗸		
▶ Header Informati	on			Main		
		Destination Information	1			
		E-mail Address				
		🗆 Registration of Ce	rtification Information			
		Registration o	f Certification Informat	ion		
				Browse		
		C Deletion of Ce	rtification Information			
		Limiting Access to D	estinations			
			Di	splay		
				[OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Registration of Certifica- tion Information	Select the "Registration of Certification Information" check box. To specify a storage location of certification information to be registered, click [Browse]. Only files in the DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) format are supported for certificate information. To delete the certificate information, select "Deletion of Cer- tification Information".	Certificate storage loca- tion

۵...

Reminder

If the E-mail address to be registered does not match the E-mail address of the certificate, the certificate cannot be registered. Confirm whether both E-mail addresses match, and then register the certificate.

2-20

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "S/MIME".

	2	Administrator				Logout	?
E Stage Web Connect	ion 🖪	Ready to Scan					
Model Name: bizhub C353		Ready to Print					(de f
Maintenance So	ecurity	Box	Print Setting	Store Ad	dress	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting	s	5/MIME					
▼ E-mail Setting		S/MIME Comm.Set	ting	ON 🛩			
► E-mail RX (POP)			Iministrator's e-mail a			-	
▶ E-mail TX (SMTP)		creation.)	d with the e-mail addr	ess specilled at th	ie unie or ce	runcauon	
► S/MIME		Digital Signature		Do not add sig	nature 💌		
▶ I-Fax Advanced Setti	ng	E-Mail Text Encryp	t. Method	3DES 🗸			
▶ LDAP Setting		Automatically Obta	in Certificates	ON 🛩			
▶ IPP Setting		Print S/MIME inform	nation	OFF 🛩			
► FTP Setting	-						
▶ SNMP Setting					C)K Cancel]
▶ SMB Setting							
▶ Web Service Settings							
▶ Bonjour Setting							
▶ NetWare Setting							
▶ AppleTalk Setting							
▶ Network Fax Setting							
▶ WebDAV Settings							
▶ OpenAPI Setting							
▶ TCP Socket Setting							

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Automatically Obtain Certificates	Select "ON".	

Q

Detail

After specifying settings for "Automatically Obtain Certificates", register the E-mail address for which a certificate is to be registered in Address Book. After registering the E-mail address, send the message with a digital signature attached from the computer on the network to this machine. If the E-mail address registered in this machine matches the E-mail address of the received certificate, the certificate is automatically registered.

2.7 Specifying the date and time on this machine

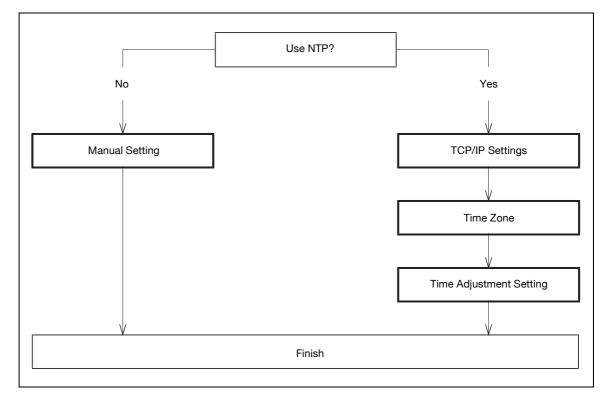
→ Specify the date and time of the internal clock of this machine.

The following specification methods are available: manual specification and acquisition from the NTP server via the network.

To use the fax function on this machine, specify the date and time of this machine in advance.

To make this machine log in to the Active Directory, it may be necessary to specify the date and time of this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

The following sections contain descriptions on the settings to make this machine log in to the Active Directory. For details, refer to the respective sections.

"Searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server" on page 2-45 "Limiting users using this machine (Active Directory)" on page 2-128

2.7.1 Manual Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Date/Time Setting".
- 3 Select "Manual Setting".

A Maintenance - Microsoft Internet Explorer	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Year	Enter the year.	
Month	Enter the month.	
Day	Enter the day.	
Hour	Enter the hour.	
Minute	Enter the minutes.	
Time Zone	Select the time difference from GMT.	Time zone
Daylight Saving Time	If necessary, specify the daylight saving time setting.	

2.7.2 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.7.3 Time Zone

→ On the Manual Setting screen, specify setting for "Time Zone".

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Manual Setting" on page 2-23.

2.7.4 Time Adjustment Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Date/Time Setting".
- 3 Select "Time Adjustment Setting".

		Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Conne	ction	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Time Adjustment Sett	ting			
▶ ROM Version		Time Adjustment Settir	ng C	DN 💌		
▶ Import/Export		NTP Server Address	_	Please check to ente	er host name.	
Status Notification Set	ting			.0.0.0		
Total Counter Notificat Setting	tion	Port No.	1	23 (1-65535)		_
▶ Machine Setting				Adjust	OK Cancel	
▶ Online Assistance						
▼ Date/Time Setting						
▶ Manual Setting						
► Time Adjustment S	etting					
▶ Timer Setting						
▶ Network TWAIN						
▶ Reset						
External Memory Fund Settings	ction					
▶ Header/Footer Registr	ation					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Time Adjustment Setting	Select "ON".	
NTP Server Address	Specify the NTP server address. (Format: "****.****, Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 123 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
[Adjust]	Connects to the NTP server with the specified conditions to adjust the time.	

2.8 Sending scan data to a Windows computer

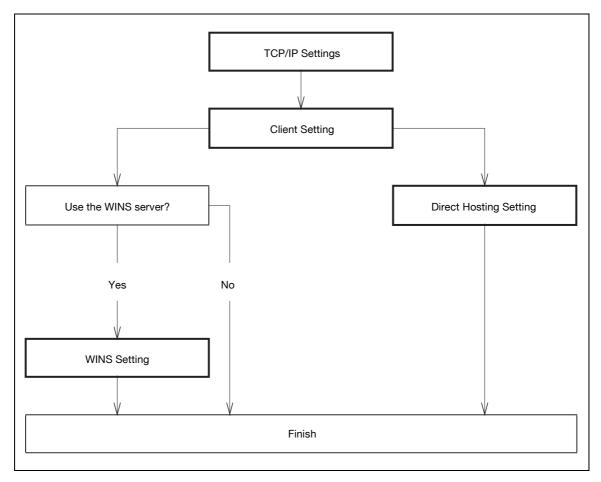
Specify settings for sending scan data to a Windows computer.

Scan data can be sent directly to a computer specified on the network. In order to perform a Scan to PC (SMB) operation, first specify shared file settings in Windows on the computer receiving the data.

This machine supports the direct hosting service. To specify a destination computer using the computer name in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting must be enabled. When the Direct Hosting setting is enabled, the DNS server is used for name resolution to start communication with the computer name specified and the IPv6 address is acquired. To use the direct hosting service, prepare a DNS server and specify the DNS settings of this machine correctly.

To specify a computer on another network using Windows name (NetBIOS name), a WINS server must be used.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

For details on registering SMB addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the SMB-based file transmission, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.8.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

To specify a destination computer using the computer name in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting must be enabled. To enable the Direct Hosting setting, prepare a DNS server and be sure to specify the DNS settings of this machine correctly.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.8.2 Client Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SMB Setting".
- 3 Select "Client Setting".

	OLTA	🎧 Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Cor	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting	,	Client Setting				- I
► E-mail Setting		SMB TX Setting		ON 🗸		
► LDAP Setting		NTLM Setting		v1 🗸		
► IPP Setting		User Authentication(I	NTLM)	ON 🕶		
► FTP Setting						_
SNMP Setting					OK Cancel	1
▼ SMB Setting						-
▶ WINS Setting						
Client Setting						
► Print Setting						
► Direct Hosting !	Setting					
▶ Web Service Setti	-					
▶ Bonjour Setting	5					
▶ NetWare Setting						
► AppleTalk Setting						
▶ Network Fax Setti	ng					
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Settin	a					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMB TX Setting	Select "ON".	
NTLM Setting	Specify the NTLM version. To perform SMB TX to Mac OSX, Samba (Linux/Unix), spec- ify "v1". To perform SMB TX to Windows 98SE/Windows Me, specify "v1/v2" or "v1".	Destination OS

2.8.3 Direct Hosting Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SMB Setting".
- **3** Select "Direct Hosting Setting".

	οιτλ	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Co		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Scan				C.
						<u>.</u>
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Direct Hosting Settin	ng			
▶ E-mail Setting		Direct Hosting Setting		ON 🕶		
▶ LDAP Setting						
▶ IPP Setting					OK Cancel	
▶ FTP Setting						
▶ SNMP Setting						
▼ SMB Setting						
▶ WINS Setting						
Client Setting						
▶ Print Setting						
Direct Hosting	Setting					
▶ Web Service Sett	tings					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
► AppleTalk Setting	J					
▶ Network Fax Sett	ing					
▶ WebDAV Settings	\$					
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Setti	ng					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Direct Hosting Setting	To use the direct hosting service, select "ON". To communicate with the destination using an IPv6 address, select "ON".	Whether the IPv6 envi- ronment is available

2.8.4 WINS Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SMB Setting".
- 3 Select "WINS Setting".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	?	
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan					
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ	
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
► TCP/IP Setting		WINS Setting					
► E-mail Setting		WINS		ON 🗸			
► LDAP Setting		Auto Obtain Setting	I	Enable 👻			
▶ IPP Setting		WINS Server Address1	C).0.0.0			
▶ FTP Setting		WINS Server Address2	0).0.0.0]		
► SNMP Setting		Node Type Setting		3 Node 👻			
▼ SMB Setting							
► WINS Setting					OK Cancel		
▶ Client Setting							
▶ Print Setting							
▶ Direct Hosting	Setting						
▶ Web Service Sett	ings						
▶ Bonjour Setting							
▶ NetWare Setting							
► AppleTalk Setting	I						
▶ Network Fax Sett	ing						
▶ WebDAV Settings							
▶ OpenAPI Setting							
▶ TCP Socket Settin	na						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
WINS	To use the WINS server, select "ON".	
Auto Obtain Setting	To automatically obtain the WINS server address, select "Enable". This item is enabled when the DHCP is enabled.	Whether automatic ac- quisition is available with DHCP
WINS Server Address 1 and 2	Specify the WINS server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255)	Address of the server
Node Type Setting	 Specify the name resolution method. B Node: Query by broadcast P Node: Query to WINS server M Node: Query in the order of broadcast, then WINS server H Node: Query in the order of WINS server, then broadcast 	

Specify settings for sending scan data by E-mail.

Q Detail

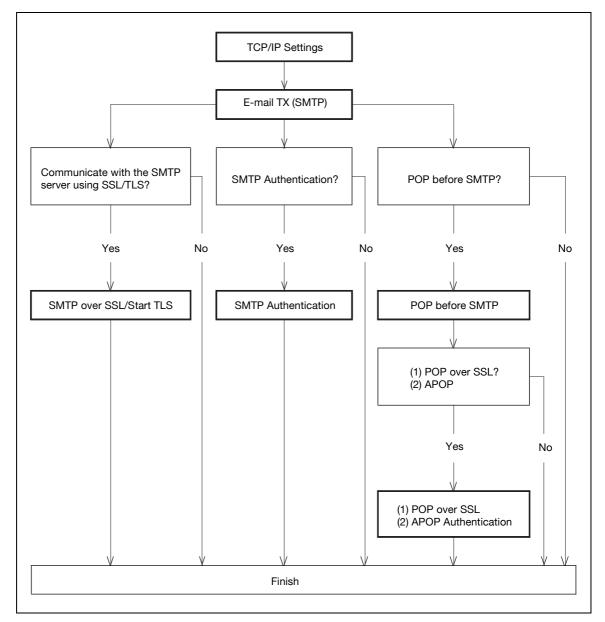
Scan data can be sent to a specified E-mail address as an attached file of the message.

If the SMTP server supports SMTP over SSL or STARTTLS, setting is recommended. Because communication can be encrypted by SSL/TLS, the machine can communicate securely with the server.

If the SMTP server requires SMTP authentication, the SMTP authentication setting must be specified.

If the SMTP server requires POP before SMTP authentication, the POP before SMTP authentication setting must be specified. In addition, if the POP server supports POP over SSL or APOP authentication, settings for these can be specified.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

2

For details on registering E-mail addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the E-mail-based file transmission, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.9.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.9.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

E-mail TX (SMTP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting.".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

		Administrator Logout				
Model Name: bizhub C	nection	Seady to Scan				
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		E-mail TX (SMTP)				_
▼ E-mail Setting		🗹 E-mail TX Setting				
🕨 E-mail RX (POP)	Scan to E-mail		ON 🕶		
► E-mail TX (SMT	P)	E-mail Notification		ON 🗸		
► S/MIME		Total Counter Notific	ation	ON ¥		
▶ I-Fax Advanced	Setting	SMTP Server Address		Please check to en 0.0.0.0	ter host name.	
► LDAP Setting	, j	Use SSL/TLS		0.0.0		
▶ IPP Setting		Port Number		25 (1-65535)		
► FTP Setting		Port No.(SSL)		465 (1-65535)		
► SNMP Setting		Connection Timeout		60 ¥ sec.		
▶ SMB Setting		Max Mail Size		No Limit 👻		
▶ Web Service Settin	nas	Server Capacity		Mbyte(1-100)		
▶ Bonjour Setting		Admin. E-mail Address		admin@co.jp		
▶ NetWare Setting		Device Mail Address				
AppleTalk Setting		Authentication Setting POP before SMTP		055 11		
Network Fax Setting		POP before SMTP	imo	OFF 🕶 5 sec. (0-60)		
WebDAV Settings	.9	SMTP Authenti		5 sec. (0-60)		
 OpenAPI Setting 		User ID				
 TCP Socket Setting 		Password				
FICP Socket Setting	9	Domain Name				
		Binary Division				
		Divided Mail Size		Kbyte		
				(100-15000;Step100)		
					OK Cancel	1
					Caricel	1

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail TX Setting	Select "ON".	
Scan to E-mail	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server address. (Format: "***********, Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of sent messages.	
Server Capacity	To limit the maximum mail size, specify the max. allowance of the mail size including the attached file. Mails exceeding the maximum allowance are removed. If a mail is separated, this setting is disabled.	Receiving limit of the server
Admin. E-mail Address	The administrator address specified in "Machine Setting" in the Maintenance tab in Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection is displayed.	
Binary Division	To divide the mail size, select "ON". If the mail software used for receiving mails does not have the mail restore function, the mails may not be read.	Restore function of the mail soft
Divided Mail Size	To divide the mail, specify a divided mail size.	Receiving limit of the server

Admin. E-mail Address

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Machine Setting".
- 3 Specify the administrator address.

	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
Scoff Web Connection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Scan				Ŷ
Maintonanco Socurit	"Roy	Qrint.Sotting	Stare Address	Notwork	
uuuuun aanaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa					anagananan Terenser
	and the second sec			1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 - 1999 -	Salar george land

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Admin. E-mail Address	Specify the address for the administrator (up to 128 charac- ters). If the administrator address is not set, messages cannot be sent. The set address is displayed on the transmitter section of the message. Before messages are sent, the address can be changed to one other than the administrator address from the control panel.	Address for the adminis- trator

Q

Detail

If "Change the From Address" is set to "Restrict", the From address cannot be changed when sending an E-Mail message. For details, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

E-mail TX (SMTP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Use SSL/TLS	To encrypt communication between this machine and the SMTP server using SSL/TTS, select "SMTP over SSL" or "Start TLS".	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL or STARTTLS
Port Number	Default setting: 25 If "Start TLS" is selected, specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Port No. (SSL)	Default setting: 465 If "SMTP over SSL" is selected, specify the port number to be used for SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

Action for Invalid Certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

	Administrator			Logout	?
Staff Web Connection	ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance Securit	y Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	Set Mode using SSL				
User Registration	Mode using SSL/TLS	F	Admin. Mode and User	Mode 🖌	
Account Track Registration	Dura e a circa da Adada e a				
SSL/TLS Setting	Processing Method Action for Invalid Cert	_	Continue 👻		
▶ Address Reference Setting	Action for invalid Cert	lincate C			
Permission of Address Change				OK Cancel]
▶ Auto Logout					
Administrator Password Setting					
	_				

Q

Detail

To specify settings for "Action for Invalid Certificate", create a certificate for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

2.9.4 SMTP Authentication

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMTP Authentication	To perform SMTP authentication, select the "SMTP Authen- tication" check box.	Whether the sever re- quests SMTP
User ID	Specify the user ID for the SMTP authentication (up to 255 characters).	
Password	Specify the password for the SMTP authentication (up to 128 characters).	
Domain Name	Specify the domain name for the SMTP authentication (up to 255 characters). If the authentication method is Digest-MD5, the domain name must be specified.	Authentication method
Authentication Settings	Specify whether to synchronize with user authentication. When user authentication is performed, this item is dis- played.	Whether to synchronize the user authentication



Detail

A SMTP authentication method that is supported by the SMTP server and provided with the strongest encryption strength is automatically selected from Digest-MD5, CRAM-MD5, PLAIN, and LOGIN.

If there is just one domain (realm) to which the user belongs, it is notified from the SMTP server at the time of initial communication, and communication is automatically made using the domain name. Therefore, no domain name setting on this machine is not required. If there are two domains or more to which the user belongs, however, specify the domain name to which the user belongs.

POP before SMTP

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
POP before SMTP	To perform POP before SMTP, select "ON".	Whether the sever requires POP before SMTP authentication

Q

Detail

If the POP server is different from the SMTP server, the POP server informs the SMTP server that it has been logged in. Therefore, if the set POP before SMTP time is too short, messages may not be sent.

E-mail RX (POP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail RX (POP)".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail RX Setting	To perform POP before SMTP, select "ON".	
POP Server Address	Specify the POP server address. (Format: "*********, Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Login Name	Enter the login name for the POP server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Password	Specify the password for logging in to the POP server (up to 15 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Port Number	Default setting: 110 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er

2.9.6 POP over SSL

E-mail RX (POP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail RX (POP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Use SSL/TLS	To encrypt communication between this machine and the POPS server using SSL, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL
Port No. (SSL)	Default setting: 995 Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

		Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Connect	ion <	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Č	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance S	ecurit y	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	Se	t Mode using S	۶L			
User Registration		Mode using SSL/TL	s A	Admin. Mode and User	Mode 💌	
Account Track Registrat						
SSL/TLS Setting		ocessing Metho Action for Invalid Ce	_	Continue 👻		
▶ Address Reference Setti		Action for invalid Ce				
Permission of Address Change	_				OK Cancel]
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Password Setting						

Q

Detail

To specify settings for "Action for Invalid Certificate", create a certificate for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

2.9.7 APOP Authentication

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail RX (POP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
APOP Authentication	To encrypt the login name and password when logging in to the POP server, select "ON".	Whether the sever re- quests APOP

Q

Detail

When the POP server is logged in with APOP, the password is encrypted with Digest-MD5. If "ON" is specified for APOP authentication, you cannot log in to the server if the POP server does not support APOP.

2.10 Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)

→ Specify settings for sending scan data by E-mail with the digital signature attached.

When scan data is sent by E-mail, it can be sent with the digital signature attached.

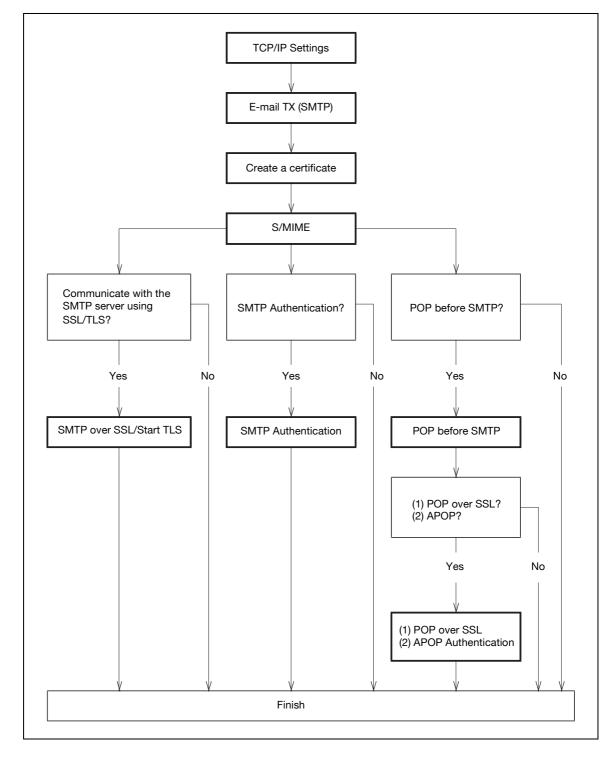
The certificate for this machine can be sent to the user by sending a message with the digital signature attached. Users can encrypt the message to send to this machine using the received certificate.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available.



For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 2-29.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.10.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.10.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

→ Specify settings for sending messages.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "E-mail TX (SMTP)" on page 2-30.

2.10.3 Create a certificate

→ Create a certificate for this machine.

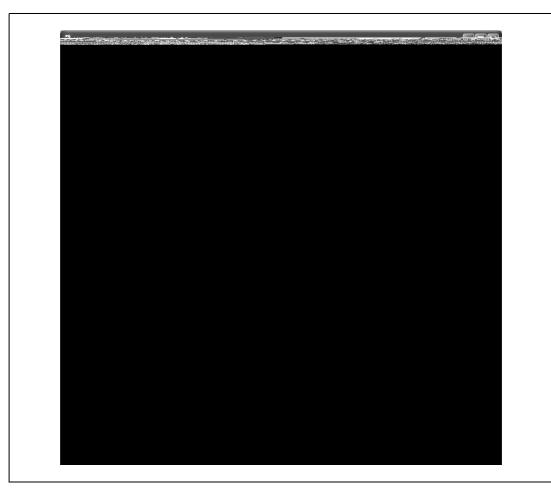
Q

Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

2.10.4 S/MIME

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "S/MIME".



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Digital Signature	Select "Always add signature" or "Select when sending".	

2.10.5 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

→ Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

Q

) Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 2-33.

2.10.6 SMTP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for SMTP authentication.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 2-34.

2.10.7 POP before SMTP

→ Specify the settings for POP before SMTP.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 2-35.

2.10.8 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.10.9 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

2.11 Sending scan data by E-mail (Public key-based encryption)

→ Specify settings for sending scan data as a message encrypted by public keys.

When scan data is sent by E-mail, the scan data can be sent by encrypting it using the user certificate registered in this machine in advance.

Sending encrypted messages prevents disclosure of information to third parties on the transmission path. In addition, if the message is encrypted by attaching the digital signature, authentication of this machine and message is possible.

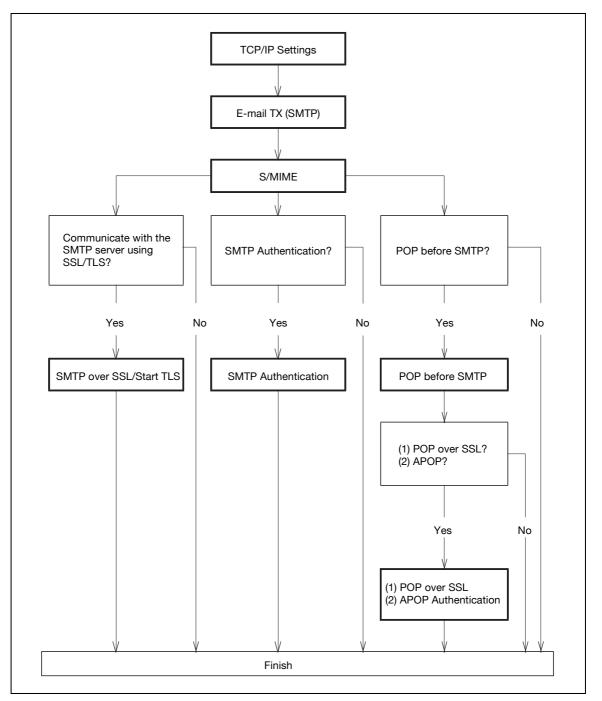


, Detail

For details on attaching the digital signature to messages, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)" on page 2-39.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 2-29.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

Addresses for which no certificate is registered are not selectable. To encrypt messages for sending, register the user certificate in this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Registering a user certificate in this machine" on page 2-19.

2.11.1 TCP/IP Settings

- → Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.
 - Q_

Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.11.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

- → Specify settings for sending messages.
 - Q Detail

For details, refer to "E-mail TX (SMTP)" on page 2-30.

2.11.3 S/MIME

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "S/MIME".

		بلوجيك والم

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
E-Mail Text Encrypt. Method	Specify the encryption type for the body of E-mail messages.	

2.11.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

→ Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

Q

Detail For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 2-33.

2.11.5 SMTP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for SMTP authentication.

Q

Detail For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 2-34.

2.11.6 POP before SMTP

→ Specify the settings for POP before SMTP.

Q

Detail For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 2-35.

2.11.7 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.11.8 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

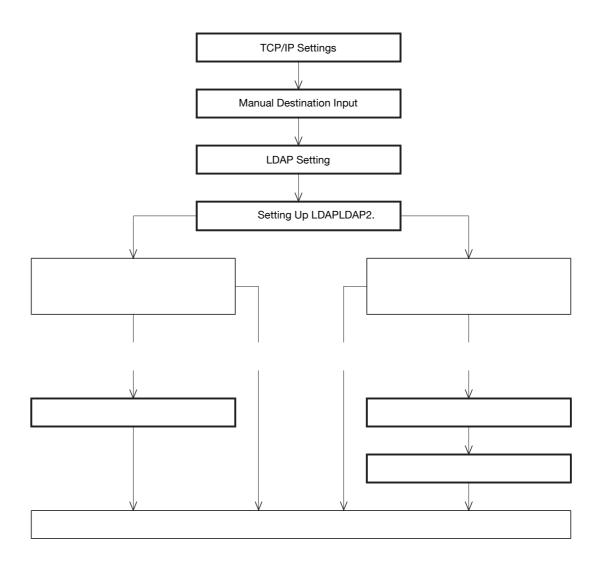
2.12 Searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server

→ Specify settings for searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server.

If the LDAP server is being for user management, the LDAP server can be accessed for searching for E-mail addresses. If this setting is specified, the [Address Search (LDAP)] key is displayed on the control panel. Using the LDAP server when specifying addresses saves trouble of registering addresses in this machine.

Also, to specify Active Directory as the LDAP server and select "GSS-SPNEGO" as the authentication method, be sure to specify a DNS server synchronized with Active Directory in the DNS Server Settings of this machine, and specify the date and time of this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Detail

For details on the LDAP search-based transmission method, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.12.1 TCP/IP Settings

2

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.12.2 Manual Destination Input

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Security Settings].
- 2 Select [4 Security Details].
- 3 Select [Manual Destination Input].

Bookmark	Administrator Settings> Security Settings> Security De	tails	
Utility	Password Rules Invalid	Job Setting Allow	
Administrator Settings	Confidential Document Access Hethod	Restrict	
Security Settings	Print Data Capture Allow		
	1/2 1 /2 1 /2	ОК	

Q

Detail

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Manual Destination Input	Select [Allow].	

2.12.3 LDAP Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "LDAP Setting".
- 3 Select "LDAP Setting".

	OLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	8
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Вох	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		LDAP Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		Enabling LDAP	10	1 ~		
▼ LDAP Setting						
► LDAP Setting					OK Cancel	
► Setting Up LDA	AP					
▶ IPP Setting						
▶ FTP Setting						
▶ SNMP Setting						
▶ SMB Setting						
▶ Web Service Sett	ings					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Setting	J					
▶ Network Fax Sett	ing					
▶ WebDAV Settings	•					
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Settin	ng					
		-				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Enabling LDAP	Select "ON".	

2.12.4 Setting Up LDAP

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "LDAP Setting".
- 3 Select "Setting Up LDAP".
- 4 Select [Edit].

	TΛ	& Administrator			Logout	?
Score Web Con	nection	Keady to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C3	353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	6	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Nationali	
	Security		Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ TCP/IP Setting		Setting Up LDAP No.		1		
▶ E-mail Setting		LDAP Server Name		і Г		
▼ LDAP Setting		Server Address		Please check to er	ter host name.	
▶ LDAP Setting				0.0.0.0		
Setting Up LDAF	•	Port Number		389 (1-65535)		
▶ IPP Setting		Enable SSL				
▶ FTP Setting		Port Number (SSL)	636 (1-65535)		
▶ SNMP Setting		Search Base				
▶ SMB Setting		Timeout		60 sec. (5-300)		
▶ Web Service Settin	gs	Max.Search Results		100 (5-1000)		
▶ Bonjour Setting		Authentication Method		anonymous 🗸 🗸		
▶ NetWare Setting		Login Name		anonymous		
► AppleTalk Setting		Password				
Network Fax Settin	g	Domain Name				
▶ WebDAV Settings		Select Server Authenti	cation Method	Set Value	~	
▶ OpenAPI Setting		Use Referral		ON 🛩		
► TCP Socket Setting		Initial Setting for Searc	h Details			
		Name		OR 🗸		
		E-mail		OR Y		
		Fax Number		OR V		
		Last Name First Name		OR 🗸		
		City		OR V		
		Organization		OR V		
		Organizational Uni	t	OR ¥		
					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
LDAP Server Name	Specify the name of the LDAP server.	
Server Address	Specify the LDAP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 389 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Search Base	Specify the search starting point in a hierarchical structure placed on the LDAP server. Searches are performed through the directory at the starting point and subdirectories under the directory.	Search base
Timeout	Specify the maximum wait time for a search operation.	
Max. Search Results	Specify the maximum number of destinations to be displayed after a search.	
Authentication Method	Select the authentication method used for logging in to the LDAP server. If "anonymous" is selected, it is not necessary to specify the login name, password, and domain name. When "GSS-SPNEGO" is selected, the machine logs in to the server using the Kerberos authentication method. The Kerberos authentication method is supported by Active Di- rectory.	Authentication method for the server
Login Name	Specify the login name for logging in to the LDAP server (up to 255 characters).	
Password	Specify the password for logging in to the LDAP server (up to 128 characters).	
Domain Name	Specify the domain name for logging in to the LDAP server (up to 64 characters). If "GSS-SPNEGO" is selected, specify the domain name of Active Directory.	Authentication method Domain name
Select Server Authenti- cation Method	Specify the server authentication method. If "Set Value" is selected, the specified login name, pass- word, and domain name are used. If "Use User Authentication" is selected, the user name and password used for external server authentication are used. When "Dynamic Authentication" is selected, a user name and password is requested for address search (LDAP).	
Use Referral	To use the referral function, select "ON".	
Initial Setting for Search Details	Specify the conditions for performing a detailed LDAP search.	

Q

Detail

Select the authentication method that is used by the LDAP server being used. For details, refer to the manual for the LDAP server being used.

2.12.5 LDAP over SSL

Setting Up LDAP

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "LDAP Setting".
- 3 Select "Setting Up LDAP".
- 4 Select [Edit].
- 5 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Enable SSL	To encrypt communication between this machine and the LDAP server using SSL, select the "Enable SSL" check box.	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL
Port Number (SSL)	Default setting: 636 Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

Action for Invalid Certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].

Г

4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

	DLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	0353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set Mode using SSL				
▶ User Registration		Mode using SSL/TLS	A	Admin. Mode and User	Mode 🛩	
► Account Track Re	gistration	Dura da si un Mantha d				
SSL/TLS Setting		Processing Method Action for Invalid Certi	ficate	Continue 🗸		
▶ Address Referenc	e Setting	Action for invalid Certi		Johninge		
Permission of Add Change	Iress				OK Cancel]
► Auto Logout						
Administrator Pas Setting	sword					
		-				

Q

Detail

To specify settings for "Action for Invalid Certificate", create a certificate for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

2.12.6 DNS Server Settings

→ To specify Active Directory as the LDAP server and select "GSS-SPNEGO" as the authentication method, specify a DNS server synchronized with Active Directory in the DNS Server Settings of this machine.

Q Detail

For details on the DNS server, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.12.7 Date/Time Setting

→ When using Active Directory, specify the date and time on this machine.



Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying the date and time on this machine" on page 2-22.

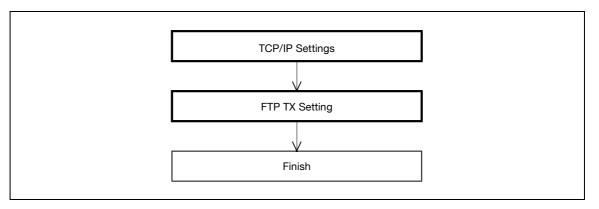
2.13 Sending scan data by FTP

→ Specify settings for sending scan data to the FTP server.

In a network environment with an FTP server, scan data can be sent to a specified folder in the FTP server on the network. The data sent to the FTP server can be downloaded from a computer on the network. This function is suitable for transmitting large-sized data, such as high-resolution data.

If a proxy server is available in the network environment, an FTP server on the Internet can be accessed through the proxy server.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

For details on registering FTP, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the FTP-based file transmission, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.13.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "FTP Setting".
- 3 Select "FTP TX Settings".

		Administrator Logout				
E Scope Web Con	nection a	ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C3	353 (Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		FTP T X				_
▶ E-mail Setting		FTP TX		ON 🕶		
▶ LDAP Setting		Proxy Server Address		Please check to en	ter host name.	
▶ IPP Setting				0.0.0.0		
▼ FTP Setting		Proxy Server Port Nur		21 (1-65535)		
► FTP TX Setting		Connection Timeout		60sec.(5-300)		
► FTP Server Sett	ing	Port Number		21 (1-65535)		
▶ SNMP Setting						-
▶ SMB Setting					OK Cancel	1
▶ Web Service Settin	igs					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
► AppleTalk Setting						
▶ Network Fax Settin	g					
<u></u>						an - 400

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
FTP TX	Select "ON".	
Proxy Server Address	To send data via a proxy server, specify the proxy server ad- dress. (Format: "***.***, ***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Proxy Server Port Number	Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Port Number	Default setting: 21 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er

2.14 Sending scan data by WebDAV

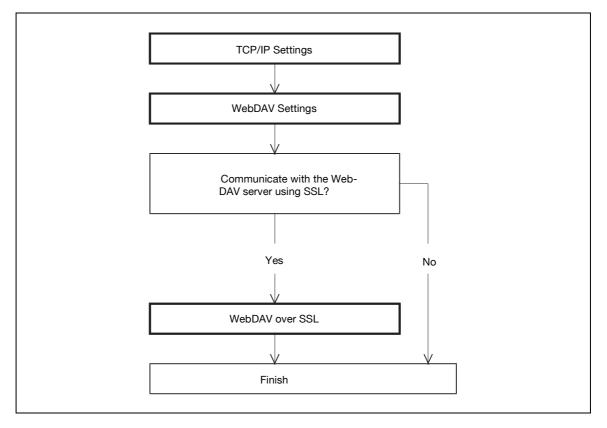
→ Specify settings for sending scan data to the WebDAV server.

In a network environment with a WebDAV server, scan data can be sent to a specified folder in the WebDAV server on the network. The data sent to the WebDAV server can be downloaded from a computer on the network.

WebDAV is based on extended specifications of HTTP, and therefore the security technology of HTTP can be used. These settings ensure safer file transmission by encrypting communication with the WebDAV server using SSL.

If a proxy server is available in the network environment, an WebDAV server on the Internet can be accessed through the proxy server.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

For details on registering WebDAV addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the WebDAV-based file transmission, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

Q

Detail

Whether or not to send using SSL encryption is specified at address registration. For details, refer to "Address Book" on page 2-182.

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

```
Q
Detail
```

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.14.2 WebDAV Settings

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "WebDAV Settings".

		Administrator	Logout	?		
Model Name: bizhub C		Ready to Scan				P
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		WebDAV Client Sett	ings			_
▶ E-mail Setting		WebDAV TX Setting		ON 🗸		
▶ LDAP Setting		Proxy Settings Proxy Server Add	Irace	✓ Please check to e	nter beet name	
▶ IPP Setting		T TOXy Derver Add	11699	Flease check to e	niter nost name.	
▶ FTP Setting		Proxy Server Por	t Number	8080 (1-65535)		
▶ SNMP Setting		User Name		[] (, 00000)		
▶ SMB Setting		Password				
▶ Web Service Setti	ngs	Connection Timeout		60 sec.(5-300)		
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting					OK Cancel	1
► AppleTalk Setting						
▶ Network Fax Settin	ng					
WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
► TCP Socket Setting	g					
	-					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
WebDAV TX Setting	Select "ON".	
Proxy Server Address	To send data via a proxy server, specify the proxy server ad- dress. (Format: "***.****, Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Proxy Server Port Number	Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
User Name	Specify the user name for the proxy server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Password	Specify the password for the proxy server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

2.14.3 WebDAV over SSL

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

Model Name: bizhub C353 Ready to Scan Model Name: bizhub C353 Box Print Setting Store Address Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Authentication Set Mode using SSL Mode using SSL/TLS Admin. Mode and User Mode v Authentication Set Mode using SSL/TLS Admin. Mode and User Mode v Account Track Registration Processing Method SSL/TLS Setting Action for Invalid Certificate Continue v Address Reference Setting OK Cancel Auto Logout OK Cancel		🌆 Administrator			Logout	8
Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network > Authentication Set Mode using SSL > User Registration Mode using SSL/TLS Admin. Mode and User Mode > Account Track Registration Processing Method > SSL/TLS Setting Action for Invalid Certificate Continue > Address Reference Setting > Permission of Address > Auto Logout	Score Web Connection	Ready to Scan				
Authentication Set Mode using SSL User Registration Account Track Registration Account Track Registration Processing Method Action for Invalid Certificate Continue Action of Address Change Auto Logout Administrator Password	Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
• User Registration Mode using SSL/TLS Admin. Mode and User Mode • • Account Track Registration • Processing Method • SSL/TLS Setting Action for Invalid Certificate Continue • • Address Reference Setting • Action for Invalid Certificate OK Cancel • Auto Logout • Administrator Password • OK Cancel	Maintenance Securi	ty Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
	Authentication	Set Mode using SSL				
> SSL/TLS Setting Processing Method > Address Reference Setting Action for Invalid Certificate > Permission of Address OK Cancel > Auto Logout Administrator Password	User Registration	Mode using SSL/TLS		Admin. Mode and User	Mode 🛩	
> SSL/TLS Setting Action for Invalid Certificate Continue > Address Reference Setting > Permission of Address Change OK Cancel > Auto Logout > Administrator Password	Account Track Registration	Provide a Marthaud				_
Address Reference Setting Permission of Address Change Auto Logout Administrator Password	SSL/TLS Setting		icato	Continuo		
Change OK Cancel > Auto Logout Administrator Password	Address Reference Setting	Action for invalid certif	Late	Continue		
Administrator Password					OK Cancel]
	▶ Auto Logout					

Q Detail

To specify settings for "Action for Invalid Certificate", create a certificate for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item

Definition

Action for Invalid Certificate

Prior confirmation

2.15 Sending an Internet fax

Specify settings for sending an Internet fax.

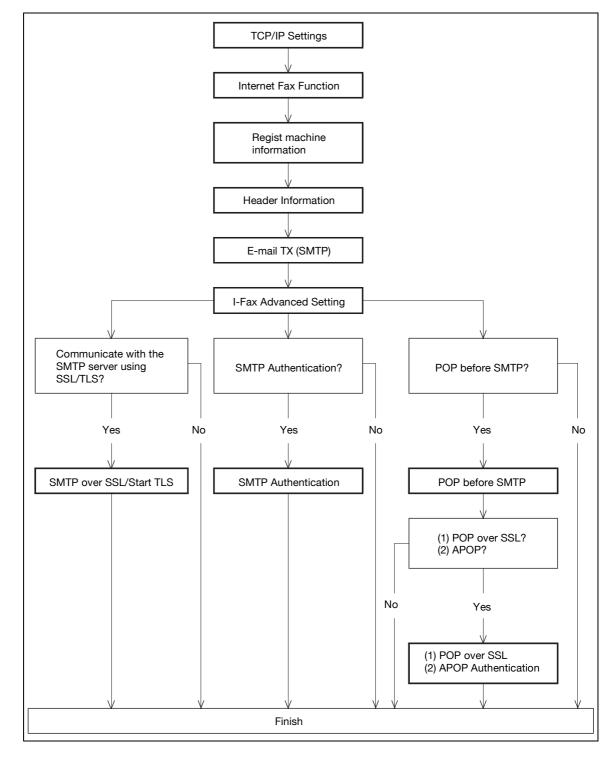
Q Detail

In order to use the Internet fax function, settings by a service engineer is required. For details, contact your service representative.

The Internet fax function sends and receives scanned originals as an attached file (TIFF format) via the intranet or Internet. This via-intranet or -Internet communication largely reduces the communication cost as compared with general fax messages.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 2-29.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



♥ Detail

2

For details on registering I-Fax addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the Internet fax operation, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.15.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.15.2 Internet Fax Function

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [5 Network Settings].
- 2 Select [2 Network Fax Setting]
- 3 Select [1 Network Fax Function Setting].

	Gelect item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Network Fax Settings Network Fax Function Settings	s >	
	IP Address Fax Function OFF	Job Setting	
Utility	SIP-Fax Function OFF	<u>ON</u>	
Administrator Settings	Internet Fax Function ON	OFF	
Network Settings			
+			
Network Fax Settings			
	18/04/2007 15:21 (enory 100%	ОК	

Q

Detail

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Internet Fax Function	Select [ON].	

Device Mail Address

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

KONICA MINOLTA	Administrator			Logout	
Scope Web Connection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print			P	<i>b</i>
Maintenance Security	Box P	rint Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting	E-mail TX (SMTP)				
▼ E-mail Setting	🗷 E-mail TX Setting				
► E-mail RX (POP)	Scan to E-mail	1	ON 🛩		
► E-mail TX (SMTP)	E-mail Notification	1	ON 🕶		
► S/MIME	Total Counter Notificatio		ON 🗸		
▶ I-Fax Advanced Setting	SMTP Server Address	_	Please check to enter Please check to ent	er host name.	
► LDAP Setting			0.0.0.0		
▶ IPP Setting	Use SSL/TLS Port Number				
▶ FTP Setting	Port No.(SSL)				
► SNMP Setting	Connection Timeout		465 (1-65535) 60 vsec.		
► SMB Setting	Max Mail Size		No Limit 🗸		
▶ Web Service Settings	Server Capacity	Г	Mbyte(1-100)		
 Bonjour Setting 	Admin. E-mail Address	a	dmin@co.jp		
▹ NetWare Setting	Device Mail Address				
, i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	Authentication Setting	_			
AppleTalk Setting	POP before SMTP		OFF 🗸		
Network Fax Setting	POP before SMTP Time	L .	5sec. (0-60)		
▶ WebDAV Settings	User ID	on F			
▶ OpenAPI Setting	Password				
TCP Socket Setting	Domain Name				
	Binary Division	L			
	Divided Mail Size	Г	Kbyte		
		(1	100-15000; Step100)		
			Г	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Device Mail Address	Specify the address for the device (up to 320 characters). If no address is specified here, the Internet fax cannot be sent.	Address for the device

Machine Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Machine Setting".



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Device Name	Specify the device name (up to 255 characters). This name is contained in the subject of the Internet fax.	

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Header Information".

	OLTA	2 🖓 🗛	dministra	tor				Log	gout	?
Scope Web Co	onnection	K R	eady to Sc	an						
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Õ P	eady to Pri	nt						Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Bo	х	Print S	etting	Store Address	Ne	twork	
▶ Address Book		Send	der Fax	No.						
▶ Group		Se	nder Fax	No.						
▶ Program										
► Temporary One-	fouch			Sender	Namo			Edit	Delete	1
▶ Subject		1	C	Jender	iunit.			Edit	Delete	
▶ Text		2	0					Edit	Delete	-
▶ Prefix/Suffix		3	0					Edit	Delete	-
Header Informati	on	4	0					Edit	Delete	-
		5	0					Edit	Delete	-
		6	0					Edit	Delete	
		7	0					Edit	Delete	
		8	0					Edit	Delete	
		9	0					Edit	Delete	
		10	0					Edit	Delete	
		11	0					Edit	Delete	
		12	0					Edit	Delete	
		13	0					Edit	Delete	
		14	0					Edit	Delete	
		15	0					Edit	Delete	
		16	0					Edit	Delete	_
		17	0					Edit	Delete	_
		18	0					Edit	Delete	
		19	0					Edit	Delete	
		20	0					Edit	Delete	
										_

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Sender Fax No.	Register the sender fax number. Normally enter the fax number of this machine.	
Default	If no sender name is specified when sending a fax, the send- er name with a check mark is used.	
Sender Name	Displays registered sender names.	
[Edit]	Registers or edits the sender name.	
[Delete]	Deletes the registered sender name.	

Registration

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
Sender Name	Enter the sender name (up to 30 characters).	

2.15.5 E-mail TX (SMTP)

2

→ Specify settings for sending messages.

```
Q
Detail
```

For details, refer to "E-mail TX (SMTP)" on page 2-30.

2.15.6 I-Fax Advanced Setting

Г

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "I-FAX Advanced Setting".

-		hicrosoft In v F <u>a</u> vorites			_	_					
	KONICA			Sa Adr	unistrator		 		Loqout	2	
Terrates	orany a star		#*S				 and a second s	-		and the second second	

Q Detail

If the Internet fax function is disabled, this menu item is not displayed.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
MDN Request	Select "ON". If the fax is printed at the receiving side, MDN response can be received.	
DSN Request	Select "ON". If the fax reaches the mail server at the receiving side, DSN response can be received. If MDN is specified to "ON", DSN is not required.	
MDN/DSN Response Observation Time	Specify the waiting time for MDN or DSN response. MDN or DSN response of which set waiting time was up is ignored.	
Maximum Resolution	Specify the maximum resolution.	

2.15.7 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

→ Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 2-33.

2.15.8 SMTP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for SMTP authentication.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 2-34.

2.15.9 POP before SMTP

→ Specify the settings for POP before SMTP.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 2-35.

2.15.10 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

Q

Detail For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.15.11 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q

, Detail

For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

2.16 Receiving Internet faxes

Specify settings for receiving Internet faxes.

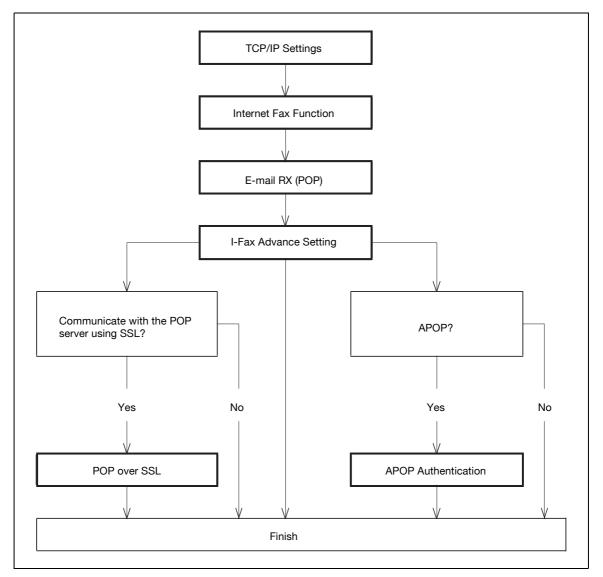
Q Detail

In order to use the Internet fax function, setting by a service engineer is required. For details, contact your service representative.

The Internet fax function sends and receives scanned originals as an attached file (TIFF format) via the intranet (internal company networks) or Internet. This via-intranet or -Internet communication largely reduces the communication cost as compared with general fax messages.

Performing APOP authentication when receiving an Internet fax ensures safer communication.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

For details on registering I-Fax addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the Internet fax operation, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.16.2 Internet Fax Function

 \rightarrow Enable the Internet fax function of this machine.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Internet Fax Function" on page 2-58.

2.16.3 E-mail RX (POP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail RX (POP)".

NovitasTaolsUols	an a start and		

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail RX Setting	Select "ON".	
POP Server Address	Specify the POP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Login Name	Enter the login name for the POP server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Password	Type in the login password for the POP server (up to 15 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Port Number	Default setting: 110 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Check for New Messag- es	To automatically receive messages, select the "Check for New Messages" check box.	
Polling Interval	To automatically receive messages, specify an interval for receive messages automatically.	

Q Detail

By touching [Receive I-Fax] on the Fax/Scan mode screen of the control panel, E-mail messages can be manually received.

2.16.4 I-Fax Advance Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "I-FAX Advanced Setting".

7				
-		icrosoft Int F <u>a</u> vorites		
an area	eres a t		65	Administrator Logout

Q

Detail

If the Internet fax function is disabled, this menu item is not displayed.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
MDN Response	To reply to the message disposition notification request from the sender, select "ON".	

2.16.5 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.16.6 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q Detail

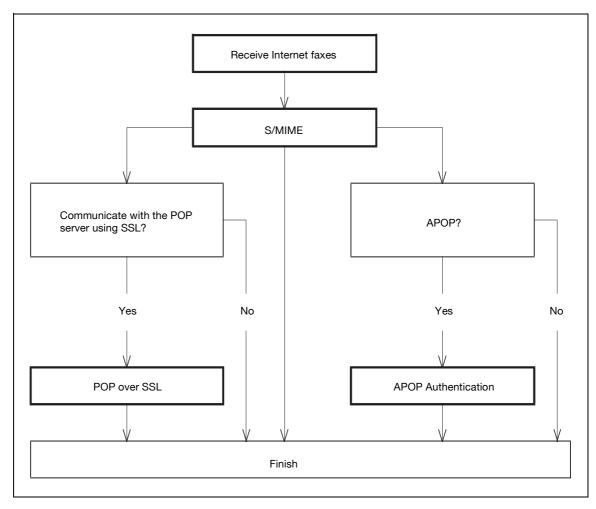
For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

2.17 Receiving Internet faxes encrypted with the public keys of this machine

→ Specify settings for receiving Internet faxes encrypted by the public keys of this machine.

When the machine of the sender supports the encryption of the Internet fax, the user can encrypt Internet faxes for transmission using the certificate including public keys for this machine acquired in advance. Because only this machine can decrypt the encrypted data, disclosure of information to third parties on the transmission path can be prevented.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



) Detail

For details on acquiring a certificate for this machine, refer to "Acquiring the certificate for this machine" on page 2-18.

2.17.1 Receive Internet faxes

→ Specify settings for receiving Internet faxes.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Receiving Internet faxes" on page 2-64.

2.17.2 S/MIME

2

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "S/MIME".

	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?	
Stage Web Connection	Ready to Scap	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print					
	v					
Maintenance Security	/ Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
► TCP/IP Setting	S/MIME					
▼ E-mail Setting	S/MIME Comm.Set	-	ON 🕶			
► E-mail RX (POP)			ddress specified in the do ess specified at the time (-		
▶ E-mail TX (SMTP)	creation.)					
► S/MIME	Digital Signature		Do not add signature	~		
▶ I-Fax Advanced Setting	E-Mail Text Encryp	t. Method	3DES 🗸			
▶ LDAP Setting	Automatically Obtain Certificates					
▶ IPP Setting	Print S/MIME information ON V					
▶ FTP Setting						
▶ SNMP Setting				OK Cancel]	
▶ SMB Setting						
▶ Web Service Settings						
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
► AppleTalk Setting						
Network Fax Setting						
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Setting						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Print S/MIME informa- tion	Select "ON". When receiving an encrypted Internet fax, S/MIME informa- tion can be printed.	

2.17.3 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

```
Q
```

Detail

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.17.4 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

2.18 Sending and receiving IP address faxes

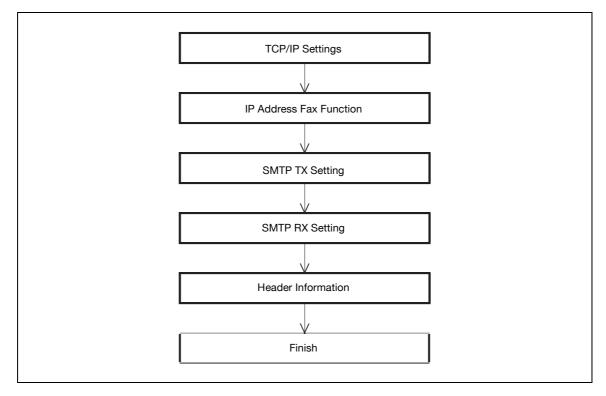
→ Specify settings for sending and receiving IP address faxes.

Q Detail

To use the IP address fax function, this machine must be equipped with an optional fax kit. In order to use the IP address fax function, setting by a service engineer is required. For details, contact your service representative.

The IP address fax enables communication on the IP network. Specify the host name or IP address for the destination to send a Fax. SMTP protocol is used for sending and receiving faxes. Because IP address faxes are sent and received via the SMTP server function of this machine, no SMTP server is required.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

For details on registering IP address fax addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

For details on the IP address fax operation, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.18.1 TCP/IP Settings

2

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

♥ Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.18.2 IP Address Fax Function

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [5 Network Settings.].
- 2 Select [2 Network Fax Setting].
- 3 Select [1 Network Fax Function Setting].

	elect item and enter setting.			
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Network Fa Network Fax Function Settings	x Settings >		
	IP Address Fax Function	ON	Job Setting	
Utility	SIP-Fax Function	0FF	ON	
Administrator	Internet Fax Function	OFF	OFF	
Settings				
Network Settings				
•				
Network Fax Settings				
Network Fax Function Setting	7/04/2007 15:04		ОК	

Q

Detail

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IP Address Fax Function	Select [ON].	

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Network Fax Setting".
- 3 Select "SMTP TX Setting".

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help	an a	the second s

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number to be used
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

2.18.4 SMTP RX Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Network Fax Setting".
- **3** Select "SMTP RX Setting".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Co	onnection	Keady to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		SMTP RX Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		SMTP RX	ON	~		
▶ LDAP Setting		Port Number	25	(1-65535)		
▶ IPP Setting		Connection Timeout	300	sec. (5-1000)		
▶ FTP Setting						
▶ SNMP Setting					OK Cancel	
▶ SMB Setting						
▶ Web Service Set	tings					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Settin	g					
▼ Network Fax Set	ting					
► SMTP TX Set	ting					
SMTP RX Set	ting					
▶ WebDAV Setting	s	-				
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
► TCP Socket Setti	ng					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMTP RX	Select "ON".	
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number to be used
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

2.18.5 Header Information

→ Register sender information for fax transmissions.

Q Detail

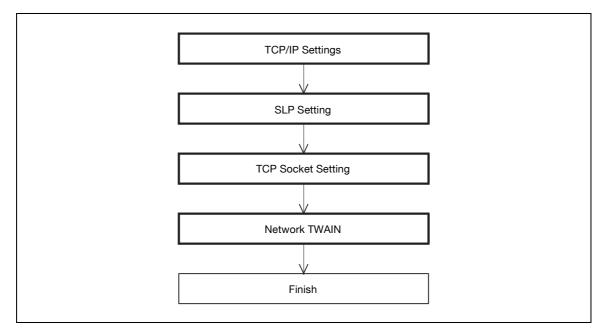
For details, refer to "Header Information" on page 2-61.

2.19 Importing images using the TWAIN scan

→ Specify settings for using this machine as a scanner.

Using the TWAIN driver enables this machine to be used as a scanner. This machine can be controlled from a computer connected to the network, and the scanned data can be imported into an application on the computer to be processed.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail For details on installing the TWAIN driver, refer to the TWAIN driver manual on the Driver CD-ROM.

2.19.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.19.2 SLP Setting.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 4 Specify the following setting.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SLP	To search for this machine using TWAIN, select "Enable".	

2.19.3 TCP Socket Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP Socket Setting".

	OLTA	🖓 Administrator		[Logout	?
Le score Web Connection		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C		Ready to Scan				C.
		Troudy to Think				
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		TCP Socket Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting			FF, and then ON , wh	en changing TCP Socket.)		
▶ LDAP Setting		TCP Socket		59158 (1-65535)		
▶ IPP Setting		Port Number		59158 (1-65535)		
▶ FTP Setting		Port No.(SSL)		59159 (1-65535)		
▶ SNMP Setting		TCP Socket(ASC	II Mode)	[] ((100000)		
▶ SMB Setting		Port No. (ASCII M	,	59160 (1-65535)		
▶ Web Service Setti	ngs					_
▶ Bonjour Setting					OK Cancel	1
▶ NetWare Setting						1
▶ AppleTalk Setting						
▶ Network Fax Setti	ng					
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
TCP Socket Settin	g					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP Socket	Select the "TCP Socket" check box.	
Port Number	Specify the port number.	

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Network TWAIN".

	LTA	🎥 Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Cor	nection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Network TWAIN				
▶ ROM Version		TWAIN Lock Time	120	sec. (30-300)		
▶ Import/Export						_
Status Notification	Setting				OK Cancel	
Total Counter Notic Setting	fication					
▶ Machine Setting						
▶ Online Assistance						
▶ Date/Time Setting						
▶ Timer Setting						
► Network TWAIN						
▶ Reset						
External Memory F Settings	unction					
► Header/Footer Reg	gistration					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TWAIN Lock Time	Specify the control panel lock time during TWAIN scan.	

2.20 Printing (LPR/Port9100)

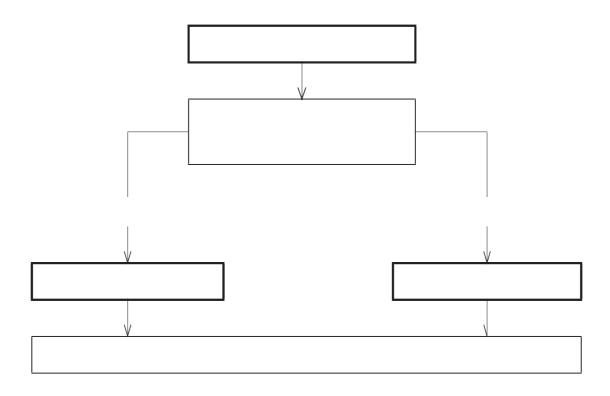
2

→ Specify settings for printing by using LPR or Port9100.

LPR printing is performed via the network using the LPR protocol. LPR printing is used in the UNIX-like OS.

Port9100 printing is performed via the network by directly specifying the RAW port (Port9100) of this machine connected to the TCP/IP network as a printer of the print destination.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

To print data using LPR or Port9100, settings for the printer driver must be specified after these settings. For details, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.20.2 LPD Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 4 Specify the following setting.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
LPD	Select "Enable".	

2.20.3 RAW Port Number

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 4 Specify the following setting.

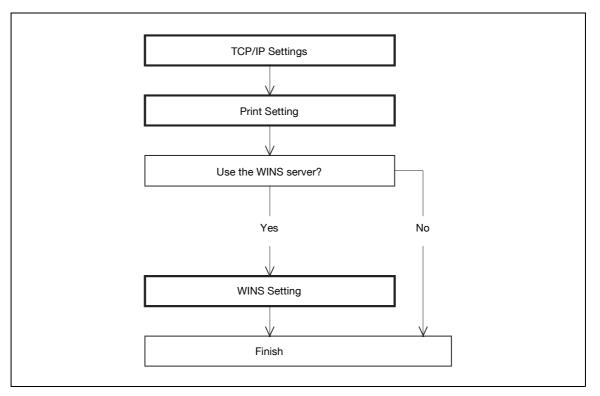
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
RAW Port Number	Select the check box for the port to be used, and then spec- ify the RAW port number.	

2.21 Printing (SMB)

→ Specify settings for printing by using SMB.

The printer is sharable on the Windows network by using the SMB protocol. SMB printing is performed by directly specifying this machine on the Windows network from the computer.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

2.21.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.21.2 Print Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SMB Setting".
- 3 Select "Print Setting".

	OLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	2
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Print Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
▶ LDAP Setting		SMB Print	C	DN 👻		
▶ IPP Setting		NetBIOS Name*	Γ]	
▶ FTP Setting		Print Service Name*]	
▶ SNMP Setting		Workgroup*	V	VORKGROUP]	
▼ SMB Setting						
▶ WINS Setting					OK Cancel	
▶ Client Setting						
Print Setting						
▶ Direct Hosting	-					
▶ Web Service Sett	ings					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
AppleTalk Setting						
Network Fax Setting	-					
▶ WebDAV Settings ▶ OpenAPI Setting						
TCP Socket Setting						
F TCP Socket Setur	ig					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMB Print	Select "ON".	
NetBIOS Name	Specify the NetBIOS name with uppercase letters (up to 15 characters).	
Print Service Name	Specify the print service name with uppercase letters (up to 12 characters).	
Workgroup	Specify the workgroup name with uppercase letters (up to 15 characters).	Workgroup to which you belong

2.21.3 WINS Setting

→ To perform SMB print via the router, specify settings for the WINS server.

Q Detail

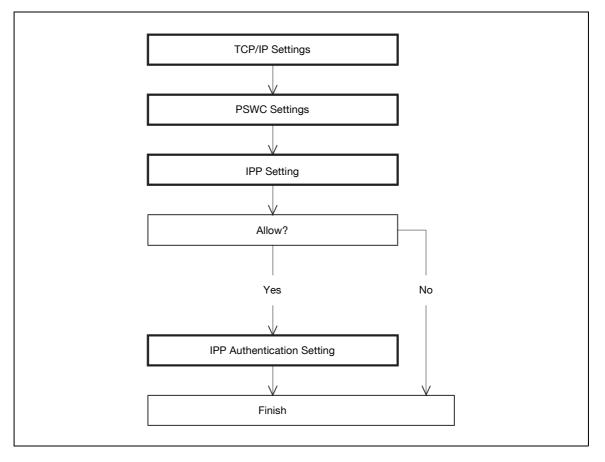
For details, refer to "WINS Setting" on page 2-28.

2.22 Printing (IPP)

→ Specify settings for printing using IPP.

IPP printing is performed via the network using the IPP protocol. Using the HTTP protocol can transfer print data to the printer on the network, and therefore also enabling output to a remote printer via the Internet.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

```
Q
Detail
```

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.22.2 PSWC Settings

- 1 On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [5 Network Settings].
- 2 Select [3 HTTP Server Settings].

	Specify the http settings.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Network Settings > HTTP Server Settings
	ON OFF 1 /4 +Back Gara +
Utility	PSWC Settings
Administrator Settings Network Settings ULP Resver	ON OFF
	17/04/2007 14:52 Henory 100%

Q Detail

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
PSWC Settings	Select [ON].	

2.22.3 IPP Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "IPP Setting".

Ready to Scan Ready to Print Box Setting Setting scept IPP job inter Name inter Location inter Location URI:/TestData00 URI:/TestData01 URI:/TestData01 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData05 URI:/TestData05 URI:/TestData05	Print Setting	Store Add	IESS	Network	
Box Setting P Setting ccept IPP job inter Name inter Location inter URI URI:/TestData00 URI:/TestData02 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData04 URI:/TestData04 URI:/TestData04 URI:/TestData04 URI:/TestData04	Print Setting	ON 🛩	IESS	Network	
Setting P Setting ccept IPP job inter Name inter Location inter Information inter URI URI:/TestData00 URI:/TestData01 URI:/TestData02 URI:/TestData04 URI:/TestData05 URI:/TestData05 URI:/TestData05	Print Setting	ON 🛩	Iess	Network	
P Setting ccept IPP job inter Name inter Location inter Information inter URI URI:/TestData00 URI:/TestData01 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData04 URI:/TestData05 uRI:/TestData05					
ccept IPP job inter Name inter Location inter Information inter URI URI:/TestData00 URI:/TestData01 URI:/TestData02 URI:/TestData03 URI:/TestData05 URI:/TestData05					
inter Name inter Location inter Information URI://TestData00 URI://TestData01 URI://TestData02 URI://TestData03 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 uRI://TestData05					
inter Location inter Information URI://TestData00 URI://TestData01 URI://TestData02 URI://TestData03 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 uRI://TestData05					
inter Information inter URI URI://TestData00 URI://TestData01 URI://TestData02 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 uPRI//TestData05					
inter URI URI://TestData00 URI://TestData01 URI://TestData02 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 upport Operation					
URI://TestData00 URI://TestData01 URI://TestData02 URI://TestData03 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 upport Operation					
URI://TestData01 URI://TestData02 URI://TestData03 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 upport Operation					
URI://TestData03 URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 upport Operation					
URI://TestData04 URI://TestData05 upport Operation					
upport Operation					
Print Job					
 Print Job Valid Job 					
Cancel Job					
🗹 Open Job Attribu	tes				
Open Job					
	, v				
	Da		name 🚩		
		user			
ICAIII					
•	 Open Job Attribution Open Job Open Printer Attribution IPP Authentication State 	 ✓ Open Job Attributes ✓ Open Job ✓ Open Printer Attributes IPP Authentication Setting Authentication Method User Name Password 			Image: Point of the strength of the strengend of the strength of the strength of the strength

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPP Setting	Select "ON".	
Accept IPP job	Select "ON".	
Printer Name	Specify the printer name (up to 127 characters).	
Printer Location	Specify the printer location (up to 127 characters).	
Printer Information	Specify the printer information (up to 127 characters).	
Printer URI	Displays the URI of the printer that can use IPP when print- ing.	
Support Operation	Specify the print operations supported by IPP.	

2.22.4 IPP Authentication Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "IPP Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPP Authentication Set- ting	To perform IPP printing, select the "IPP Authentication Set- ting" check box.	
Authentication Method	Specify the authentication method.	
User Name	Specify the user name (up to 20 characters).	
Password	Enter the password (up to 20 characters).	
realm	Specify realm (up to 127 characters). If the authentication method is digest, realm must be speci- fied.	Authentication method

2.23 Printing (IPPS)

→ Specify settings for printing using IPPS.

When performing IPP printing with this machine, communication between the computer and this machine is encrypted using SSL. Encrypting communication using SSL improves security when printing using IPP.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.

Q

Detail

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

Q Detail

When specifying to use IPP printing in Windows Vista, enter "https://[Host Name].[Domain Name]/ipp". For [Host Name] and [Domain Name], use the names specified on this machine and which are the common names of certificate. Also, it is necessary that the computer must be able to resolve the names

2.23.1 Printing (IPP)

→ Specify settings for printing by using IPP.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Printing (IPP)" on page 2-82.

2.23.2 SSL/TLS Setting

→ Encrypt communication with this machine using SSL.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

2.23.3 IPP Authentication Setting

→ Specify settings when authentication is used when printing using IPP.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "IPP Authentication Setting" on page 2-85.

2.24 Printing (Bonjour)

- → Specify settings for printing by connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using Bonjour.
 - When connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using Bonjour, the Bonjour settings must be specified.

Q

2

Detail

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

Bonjour Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Bonjour Setting".

KONICA MING	DLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Bonjour Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		Bonjour	0	N 🕶		
▶ LDAP Setting		Bonjour Name				
▶ IPP Setting						
▶ FTP Setting					OK Cancel	
▶ SNMP Setting						
▶ SMB Setting						
▶ Web Service Sett	ings					
Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Setting	1					
▶ Network Fax Setti	ing					
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Settin	g					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Bonjour	Select "ON".	
Bonjour Name	Specify the Bonjour name that appears as the name of the connected device (up to 63 characters).	

2.25 Printing (AppleTalk)

→ Specify settings for printing by connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using AppleTalk.
 When connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using AppleTalk, the AppleTalk settings must be specified.

Q

Detail

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

AppleTalk Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "AppleTalk Setting".

KONICA MINOLTA	🎧 Administrator			Logout	?
Score Web Connection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				C)
Maintenance Security	Вох	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting	AppleTalk Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.				
▶ LDAP Setting	AppleTalk	10	4 ~		
▶ IPP Setting	Printer Name*				
► FTP Setting	Zone Name*	*			
▶ SNMP Setting	Current Zone				
▶ SMB Setting					
▶ Web Service Settings				OK Cancel	
▶ Bonjour Setting					
▶ NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
▶ Network Fax Setting					
▶ WebDAV Settings					
▶ OpenAPI Setting					
▶ TCP Socket Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
AppleTalk	Select "ON".	
Printer Name*	Specify the printer name that appears on the selector (up to 31 characters).	
Zone Name*	Specify the zone name to which this machine belongs (up to 31 characters).	
Current Zone	Displays the current zone name.	

2.26 Printing (NetWare)

- → Specify settings for printing in a NetWare environment.
 - Before printing in the NetWare environment, settings for using this machine in the NetWare environment must be specified.

Q

2

Detail

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

2.26.1 NetWare Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "NetWare Setting".
- 3 Select "NetWare Setting".

	DLTA	Administrator Logout				
Scope Web Con	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (0353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		NetWare Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset				
▶ LDAP Setting		IPX Setting*		ON ¥		
▶ IPP Setting			OFF, and then ON ,	when changing TCP/IP.)		
▶ FTP Setting		Ethernet Frame Type	*	Auto Detect 💌		
▶ SNMP Setting		NetWare Print Mode*	*	OFF 🛩		
▶ SMB Setting		PServer				
▶ Web Service Setti	inas	Print Server				
Bonjour Setting		Print Server				
▼ NetWare Setting		Polling Interv		1sec.(1-6553	35)	
		Bindery/NDS Bindery	Setting*	NDS	~	
► NetWare Settir			Server Name*			
▶ NetWare Statu		NDS				
AppleTalk Setting		NDS	Context Name*			
Network Fax Setti		NDS	Tree Name*			
▶ WebDAV Settings		Nprinter/Rprinter				
▶ OpenAPI Setting		Print Server	Name*			
▶ TCP Socket Settin	g	Printer Numb		255 (0-255,25	5:Auto)	
		User Authentication :	Setting	ON 🛩		
					OK Cancel	1

- Settings are different depending on the environment used.
- 4 Specify the settings according to the following procedures.

For Remote Printer mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation

- ✓ Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.
- 1 From a client computer, log in to NetWare with the Administrator permission as Bindery.
- 2 Start up Pconsole.
- 3 From the "Available Options" list, select "Quick Setup".
- 4 Press the [Enter] key.
- 5 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", and "Print Queue Name" fields.
- 6 Select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field.
- 7 Save the specified settings.
- 8 Press the [Esc] key to quit Pconsole.
- 9 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.
- **10** Specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "NPrinter/Rprinter".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as Nprint- er/Rprinter (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Printer Number*	Enter the Nprinter/Rprinter printer number.	

For the print server mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation

- Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.
- ✓ To use the printer server mode, the IPX protocol must be loaded on the NetWare server.
- 1 From a client computer, log in to NetWare with the Administrator permission as Bindery.
- 2 Start up Pconsole.
- 3 From the "Available Options" list, select "Quick Setup".
- 4 Press the [Enter] key.
- 5 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", and "Print Queue Name" fields.
- 6 Select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field.
- 7 Save the specified settings.
- 8 Press the [Esc] key to quit Pconsole.
- 9 Specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

bizhub C203/C253/C353

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "PServer".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as Pserver (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Print Server Password*	If necessary, specify the password for the printer server (up to 63 characters).	
Polling Interval*	Specify an interval to make queries for jobs.	
Bindery/NDS Setting	Select "NDS/Bindery".	
File Server Name	Specify the priority file server name for Bindery mode (up to 47 characters).	

For NetWare 4.x Remote Printer mode (NDS)

- 1 Log in to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service.
- 4 Click "Print Services Quick Setup" on the "Tools" menu.
- 5 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", "Print Queue Name", and "Print Queue Volume" fields.
- 6 Select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field.
- 7 Save the specified settings.
- 8 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.
- 9 Specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "NPrinter/Rprinter".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as Nprint- er/Rprinter (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Printer Number*	Enter the Nprinter/Rprinter printer number.	

For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server mode (NDS)

- ✓ To use the printer server mode, the IPX protocol must be loaded on the NetWare server.
- 1 Log in to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service.
- 4 Click "Print Services Quick Setup (non-NDPS)" on the "Tools" menu.
- 5 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", "Print Queue Name", and "Print Queue Volume" fields.
- 6 Select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field.
- 7 Click [Create].
- 8 Specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "PServer".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as PServer (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Print Server Password*	If necessary, specify the password for the printer server (up to 63 characters).	
Polling Interval*	Specify an interval to make queries for jobs.	
Bindery/NDS Setting	Select "NDS".	
NDS Context Name	Specify the NDS context name connected with the print server (up to 191 characters).	
NDS Tree Name	Specify the NDS tree name connected with the printer server (up to 63 characters).	

For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)

- ✓ Before specifying settings for NDPS, check that the NDPS broker and NDPS manager have been created and loaded.
- Also, check that the TCP/IP protocol is specified in the NetWare server, the IP address is specified for this machine, then this machine is running.
- 1 Log in to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Right -click "Organization" or "Organizational unit" container where a printer agent is created.
- 4 Select "NDPS Printer" on the "Create" submenu.
- 5 In the "NDPS Printer Name" box, enter the "printer name".
- 6 In the "Printer Agent Source" column, select "Create a New Printer Agent", and then click "Create".
- 7 Check the printer agent name.
- 8 In the "NDPS Manager Name" box, browse through the NDPS manager names.
- 9 Register the printer agent name.
- 10 In "Gateway Types", select "Novell Printer Gateway", and then register it.
- 11 In the "Configure Novell DPS for Printer Agent" window, select "(None)" for the printer type and "Novell Port Handler" for the port handler type.
- **12** Register the settings.
- **13** In "Connection type", select "Remote (LPR on IP)".
- **14** Register the connection type.
- **15** Enter the IP address set for this machine as the host address.
- 16 Enter "Print" as the printer name.
- **17** Click the "Finish" button to register the settings. The printer driver registration screen appears.
- **18** Select "None" for each operating system to complete the registration.

2.26.2 NetWare Status

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "NetWare Setting".
- **3** Select "NetWare Status".
 - NetWare connection status can be checked, if necessary.

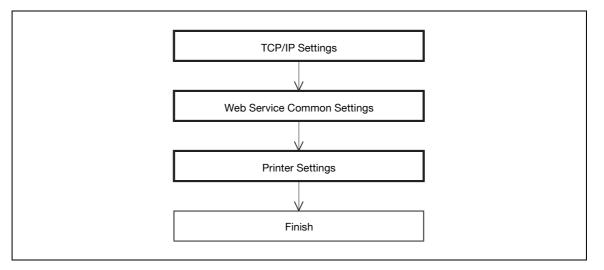
	🖓 Administrator			Logout	?
KONICA MINOLTA					
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C355	Ready to Print				C)
Maintenance Securi	ty Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting	NetWare Status				
► E-mail Setting	Server Name		Queue Name		
	ServerName1		QueueNameName1		1
▶ LDAP Setting	ServerName2		QueueNameName2		
▶ IPP Setting	ServerName3		QueueNameName3		
► FTP Setting	ServerName4		QueueNameName4		
°,	ServerName5		QueueNameName5		
▶ SNMP Setting	ServerName6		QueueNameName6		-
▶ SMB Setting	ServerName7		QueueNameName7		-
▶ Web Service Settings	ServerName8 ServerName9		QueueNameName8 QueueNameName9		-
► Bonjour Setting	ServerName9		QueueNameName9		-
, ,	Serverivameno		Guedervalhervalhero		
▼ NetWare Setting					
▶ NetWare Setting					
► NetWare Status					
▶ AppleTalk Setting					
▶ Network Fax Setting					
▶ WebDAV Settings					
▶ OpenAPI Setting					
► TCP Socket Setting					

2.27 Using the WSD print function

→ Specify settings for printing by using WSD.

Printing is possible using the WSD (Web Service on Devices) function newly installed in Windows Vista. The WSD function detects this machine connected to the network, and then installs it as a WSD printer. Specifying this machine installed as a WSD printer when printing from Windows Vista allows printing using Web service for communication.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

2.27.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q

Detail For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Web Service Settings".
- 3 Select "Web Service Common Settings".

	OLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	8
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (Ready to Print				Ø
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Web Service Commo	on Settings			
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
▶ LDAP Setting		Friendly Name*	Г			
▶ IPP Setting		SSL Setting	0	FF 🕶		
▶ FTP Setting						
▶ SNMP Setting					OK Cancel	1
▶ SMB Setting						_
▼ Web Service Sett	ings					
Web Service C Settings	Common					
▶ Printer Setting	s					
► Scanner Settin	ngs					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Setting	I					
▶ Network Fax Setti						
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Settin	ng					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 63 characters).	

2.27.3 Printer Settings

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Web Service Settings".
- 3 Select "Printer Settings".

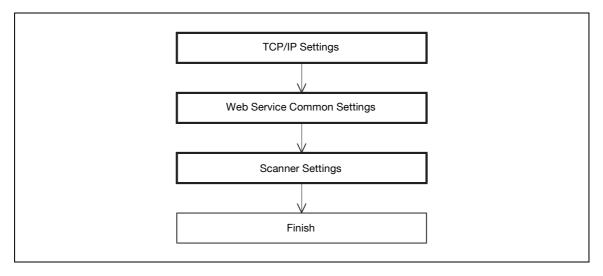
	DLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Cor	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (0353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Printer Settings			-	_
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
▶ LDAP Setting		Print Function	01	N V		
▶ IPP Setting		Printer Name*				
▶ FTP Setting		Printer Location*				
▶ SNMP Setting		Printer Information*				
▶ SMB Setting						_
▼ Web Service Setti	ngs				OK Cancel	
Web Service C Settings	ommon					
Printer Setting	s					
▶ Scanner Settin	gs					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Setting						
Network Fax Setti						
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Settin	g					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Print Function	Select "ON".	
Printer Name*	Specify the printer name (up to 63 characters).	
Printer Location*	Specify the printer location (up to 63 characters).	
Printer Information*	Specify the printer information (up to 63 characters).	

→ Specify settings for scanning using WSD.

Data can be scanned using the WSD (Web Service on Devices) function newly installed in Windows Vista to forward the scanned data to the computer. The WSD function detects this machine connected to the network, and then installs it as a WSD scanner. Specifying this machine installed as a WSD scanner when scanning from Windows Vista allows scanning using Web service for communication.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

For details on the WSD scan, refer to the User manual – Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations.

2.28.1 TCP/IP Settings

- → Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.
 - Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

bizhub C203/C253/C353

2.28.2 Web Service Common Settings

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Web Service Settings".
- 3 Select "Web Service Common Settings".

	DLTA	Administrator				Logout	?
Score Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan					
Model Name: bizhub (0353	Ready to Print					Ċ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store	Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Web Service Commor	n Settings				
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.					
▶ LDAP Setting		Friendly Name*					
▶ IPP Setting		SSL Setting		OFF 💌			
▶ FTP Setting							
▶ SNMP Setting						OK Cancel	1
▶ SMB Setting							_
▼ Web Service Setti	ings						
Web Service C Settings							
▶ Printer Setting	s						
▶ Scanner Settin	igs						
▶ Bonjour Setting							
▶ NetWare Setting							
► AppleTalk Setting							
Network Fax Setti	•						
▶ WebDAV Settings							
▶ OpenAPI Setting							
▶ TCP Socket Settin	g						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 63 characters).	

2.28.3 Scanner Settings

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "Web Service Settings".
- **3** Select "Scanner Settings".

		Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Co		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				Ŵ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		Scanner Settings				
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
▶ LDAP Setting		Scan Function	0	N 🗸		
▶ IPP Setting		Scanner Name*	ee			
▶ FTP Setting		Scanner Location*	-			
▶ SNMP Setting		Scanner Information*	K	ONICA MINOLTA bizh	ub C353	
▶ SMB Setting		Connection Timeout	12	20sec. (30-300)		
▼ Web Service Set	tings					
▶ Web Service Settings	Common			I	OK Cancel	
▶ Printer Settin	gs					
► Scanner Setti	ngs					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Settin	g					
▶ Network Fax Set	ting					
▶ WebDAV Setting	s					
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
► TCP Socket Setti	ng					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Scan Function	Select "ON".	
Scanner Name*	Specify the scanner name (up to 63 characters).	
Scanner Location*	Specify the scanner location (up to 63 characters).	
Scanner Information*	Specify the scanner information (up to 63 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

2.29 Using SSL for communication from Vista to this machine with WSD

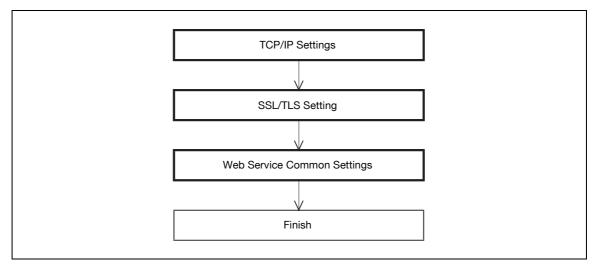
→ When using the WSD function, specify settings for SSL-based encryption of communication from a Windows Vista-equipped computer to this machine.

```
۵...
```

Note

These settings ensure safer file transmission by encrypting Web service-based communication using SSL.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

To encrypt communication from a Windows Vista-equipped computer to this machine using SSL, the computer must be able to resolve the names for this machine using the DNS server. Register this machine to the DNS server in advance, and specify settings for DNS at the computer side.

When the certificate of this machine is not published by certificate authority, register the certificate of this machine to Windows Vista as a certificate of "Trusted Publishers" for "Computer account" in advance.

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

♥ Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.29.2 SSL/TLS Setting

→ Encrypt communication with this machine using SSL.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

2.29.3 Web Service Common Settings

1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.

- 2 Select "Web Service Settings".
- 3 Select "Web Service Common Settings".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 63 characters).	
SSL Setting	Select "Enable".	

2.30 Using SSL for communication from this machine to Vista with WSD

→ When using the WSD function, specify settings for SSL-based encryption of communication from this machine to a Windows Vista-equipped computer.

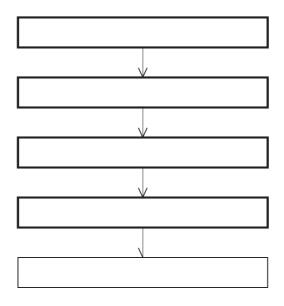
```
۵...
```

2

Note

These settings ensure safer file transmission by encrypting Web service-based communication using SSL.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q

Detail

To encrypt communication from this machine to a Windows Vista-equipped computer using SSL, create a certificate at the computer side in advance to associate the computer with the communication port.

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

♥ Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.30.2 SSL/TLS Setting

→ Encrypt communication with this machine using SSL.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

2.30.3 Web Service Common Settings

1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.

- 2 Select "Web Service Settings".
- 3 Select "Web Service Common Settings".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 63 characters).	
SSL Setting	Select "Enable".	

2.30.4 Action for Invalid Certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

KONICA MINOLTA	20	Administrator			Logout	?
E Stoff Web Connect	tion	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ğ	Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance S	ecurit y	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	S	et Mode using SS	šL			
User Registration		Mode using SSL/TL	S A	dmin. Mode and User	Mode 💌	
Account Track Registrat			•			
SSL/TLS Setting	P	ocessing Metho Action for Invalid Ce	_	Continue 🗸		
▶ Address Reference Sett	ing	Action for invalid Ce				
Permission of Address Change	_			[OK Cancel]
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Password Setting						

Q

Detail

To specify settings for "Action for Invalid Certificate", create a certificate for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

2.31 Monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager

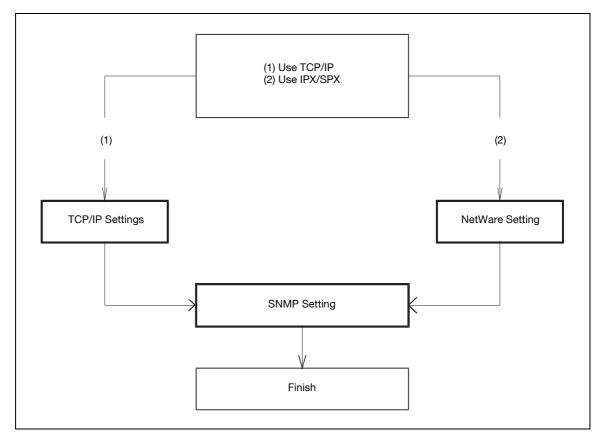
Specify settings for monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager.

Q Detail

SNMP manager-based communication with this machine allows acquisition, management, and monitoring of the information of this machine via the network. SNMP runs in a TCP/IP or IPX/SPX environment.

In addition, use of the TRAP function of SNMP allows setting for notification of the status of this machine. For details, refer to "Providing notification of the status of this machine (TRAP)" on page 2-115.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.31.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.31.2 NetWare Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "NetWare Setting".
- 3 Select "NetWare Setting".

	IOLTA	Administrator Logout				
E Stage Web Co	onnection	Keady to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				C)
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		NetWare Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
▶ LDAP Setting		IPX Setting*		ON 🗸		
▶ IPP Setting		÷	OFF, and then ON ,	when changing TCP/IP.)		
► FTP Setting		Ethernet Frame Type		Auto Detect 🐱		
► SNMP Setting		NetWare Print Mode*		OFF 🗸		
▶ SMB Setting		PServer				
► Web Service Set	tinas	Print Server N				
▶ Bonjour Setting		Print Server F				
▼ NetWare Setting		Polling Interv Bindery/NDS		1sec.(1-65535)		
► NetWare Sett		Bindery	Setting	ND5		
▶ NetWare Stat			Server Name*			
AppleTalk Settin		NDS				
 Apprenance Security Network Fax Set 	-	NDS	Context Name*			
	-		Tree Name*			
► WebDAV Setting		Nprinter/Rprinter				
OpenAPI Setting		Print Server №				
► TCP Socket Setti	ng	Printer Numb		255 (0-255,255:A	uto)	
		 User Authentication S 	erring	ON 🗸		
						_
					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SNMP Setting".

		Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Cor		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (Ready to Print				C)
		v				Q ²
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		SNMP Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		SNMP		ON 🕶		
▶ LDAP Setting				SNMP v1/v2c(IP)		
▶ IPP Setting				SNMP v3(IP) SNMP v1(IPX)		
▶ FTP Setting		UDP Port Setting		161 (1-65535)		
SNMP Setting				(1 00000)		
▶ SMB Setting		SNMP v1/v2c Setting				
▶ Web Service Setti	ings	Read Community	Name	public		
▶ Bonjour Setting		🗹 Write Community	Name	private		
▶ NetWare Setting		SNMP v3 Setting				
▶ AppleTalk Setting		Context Name				
▶ Network Fax Setti	ng	🗹 Discovery Use	r Name	public		
▶ WebDAV Settings		Read User Name		initial		
▶ OpenAPI Setting		Security Level		auth-password/priv-pass	word 🐱	
▶ TCP Socket Settin	g	auth-password	ł			
		- priv-password				
		Write User Name		restrict		
		Security Level		auth-password/priv-pass	word 🐱	
		auth-password	1			
		priv-password				
		Encryption Algorith		DES 🗸		
		Authentication Me	thod	MD5 🛩		
		TRAP Setting				
		Allow Setting		Allow 🔽		
		Trap Setting when Fails	Authentication	Disable 👻		
				Γ	OK Cancel	_

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SNMP	Specifies whether to use the SNMP. If yes, specify whether to use SNMP v1/v2 (IP), SNMP v3, and SNMP v1 (IPX). SNMP v1 (IPX) can be specified only when IPX is enabled.	Protocol to be used (TCP/IP or IPX/SPX)
UDP Port Setting	Default setting: 161 Specify the UDP port number.	
SNMP v1/v2c Setting	Specify settings for using SNMP v1/v2c.	
Read Community Name	Specify the community name to be used for scanning (up to 15 characters).	
Write Community Name	Specify the community name to be used for reading and writing (up to 15 characters).	
SNMP v3 Setting	Specify settings for SNMP v3.	
Context Name	Specify the context name (up to 63 characters).	
Discovery User Name	Specify the user name for detection (up to 32 characters).	
Read User Name	Specify the name of read only user (up to 32 characters).	
Security Level	Specify the security level for read only user.	
auth-password	Specify the read only user authentication password to be used for authentication (up to 32 characters).	
priv-password	Specify the read only user privacy password to be used for privacy (encryption) (up to 32 characters).	
Write User Name	Specify the reading/writing user name (up to 32 characters).	
Security Level	Specify the security level for reading/writing user.	
auth-password	Specify the reading/writing user authentication password to be used for authentication (up to 32 characters).	
priv-password	Specify the reading/writing user privacy password to be used for privacy (encryption) (up to 32 characters).	
Encryption Algorithm	Specify the encryption algorithm.	
Authentication Method	Specify the authentication method.	

2.32 Providing notification of the status of this machine (E-mail)

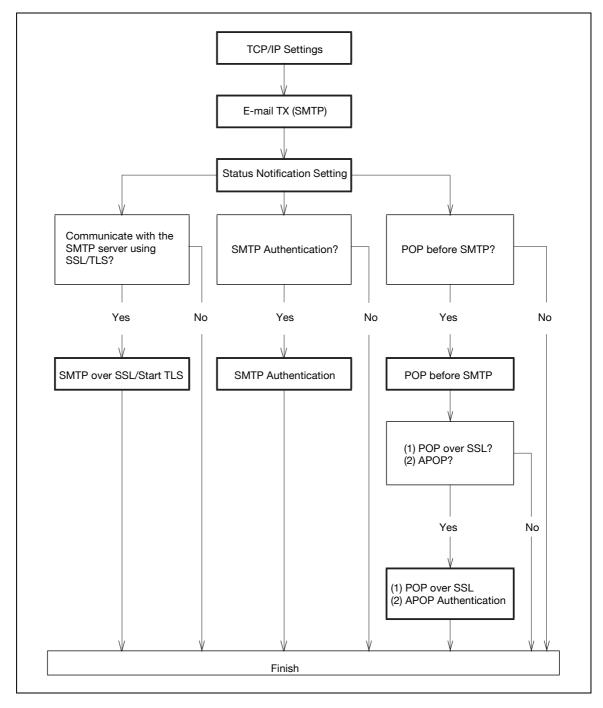
→ Specify settings for notifying the administrator of the machine status via E-mail.

Using this function provides notification for a specified address when a warning message occurs on this machine.

Q Detail

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 2-29.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.32.1 TCP/IP Settings

2

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.32.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail TX Setting	Select "ON".	
E-mail Notification	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server address. (Format: "***.***.", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of sent messages.	
Server Capacity	To limit the maximum mail size, specify the max. allowance of the mail size including the attached file. Mails exceeding the maximum allowance are removed. If a mail is separated, this setting is disabled.	Receiving limit of the server
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the administrator address. If the administrator address is not specified, specify it at "Machine Setting".	Address for the adminis- trator
Binary Division	To divide the mail size, select "ON". If the mail software used for receiving mails does not have the mail restore function, the mails may not be read.	Restore function of the mail soft
Divided Mail Size	To divide the mail, specify a divided mail size.	Receiving limit of the server

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Status Notification Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail Address".
- 4 Select [Edit].

	NOLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web C	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhul		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Status Notification	Setting			
▶ ROM Version		Destination		E-mail Address1		
▶ Import/Export		Notification Address				
Status Notification	on Setting	Alert Replenish Pa	inor Troy			
▶ Total Counter N	otification		iper rray			
Setting		PM Call				
▶ Machine Setting	J	🗆 Replace Stap	oles			
▶ Online Assistan	ce	🗆 Replenish To	ner			
▶ Date/Time Setti	ng	🗆 Finisher Tray	Full			
▶ Timer Setting		C Service Call				
Network TWAIN		☐ Job Finished ☐ Hole-Punch S				
▶ Reset		Waste Toner				
► External Memor	v Function	Imaging Unit				
Settings	,	E Fusing Unit 1	field			
▶ Header/Footer F	Registration	🗆 Transfer Belt	Unit Yield			
						_
					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Notification Address	Specify the notification address.	Notification address
Replenish Paper Tray	Provides notification when a paper-out condition occurs.	
JAM	Provides notification when a paper misfeed occurs.	
PM Call	Provides notification when a periodic inspection is required.	
Replace Staples	Provides notification when a staple-out condition occurs.	
Replenish Toner	Provides notification when a toner-out condition occurs.	
Finisher Tray Full	Provides notification when the finisher tray becomes full.	
Service Call	Provides notification when a service call occurs.	
Job Finished	Provides notification when the job is completed.	
Hole-Punch Scrap Box Full	Provides notification when hole-punch scraps must be re- moved.	
Waste Toner Box Full	Provides notification when the waste toner box must be replaced.	
Imaging Unit Yield	Provides notification when the imaging unit must be re- placed.	
Fusing Unit Yield	Provides notification when the fusing unit must be replaced.	
Transfer Belt Unit Yield	Provides notification when the transfer belt must be re- placed.	

2.32.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

→ Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 2-33.

2.32.5 SMTP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for SMTP authentication.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 2-34.

2.32.6 POP before SMTP

→ Specify the settings for POP before SMTP.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 2-35.

2.32.7 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.32.8 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

2.33.2 NetWare Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "NetWare Setting".
- 3 Select "NetWare Setting".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				Ŵ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	_
► TCP/IP Setting	,	NetWare Setting				
E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,						
► LDAP Setting		IPX Setting*		ON 🔽		
▶ IPP Setting		(Turn the main switch Ethernet Frame Type*		when changing TCP/IP.) Auto Detect 🔽)	
▶ FTP Setting		NetWare Print Mode*		OFF V		
▶ SNMP Setting		PServer				
▶ SMB Setting		Print Server N	ame*			
▶ Web Service Sett	ings	Print Server P	assword*			
▶ Bonjour Setting		Polling Interva	*	1 sec. (1-6553	35)	
▼ NetWare Setting		Bindery/NDS	Setting*	NDS	*	
► NetWare Setti		Bindery				
► NetWare Statu	IS		Gerver Name*			
► AppleTalk Setting	J	NDS	N +			
Network Fax Sett	ing		Context Name*			
▶ WebDAV Settings	3	NDS Nprinter/Rprinter	Tree Name*			
▶ OpenAPI Setting		Print Server N	ame*			
► TCP Socket Settin	ng	Printer Numbe		255 (0-255,25	5:Auto)	
	Ĵ.	- User Authentication S		ON ¥		
					OK Canc	al
						61

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type

2.33.3 TRAP Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SNMP Setting".
- **3** Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Allow Setting	Select "Allow".	
Trap Setting when Au- thentication Fails	Select whether to enable the TRAP function when authentication failed.	

2.33.4 Status Notification Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Status Notification Setting".
- 3 Select "IP (IPX) Address".
- 4 Select [Edit].

Q

Detail

For details on the settings, refer to "Status Notification Setting" on page 2-113.

2.34 Providing notification of the counter information status of this machine via E-mail

→ Specify settings for providing notification of counter information of this machine via E-mail.

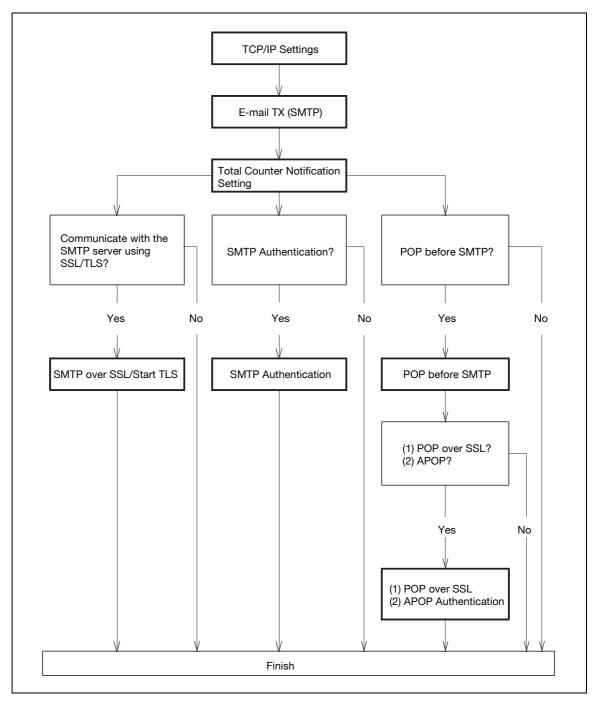
Using this function provides notification of counter information managed by this machine for a specified address. The counter of this machine can be checked by selecting PageScope Web Connection - Maintenance tab - "Meter Count".

Q

Detail

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 2-29.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.34.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "E-mail Setting".
- 3 Select "E-mail TX (SMTP)".
- 4 Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail TX Setting	Select "ON".	
Total Counter Notifica- tion	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server address. (Format: "***.***.", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of sent messages.	
Server Capacity	To limit the maximum mail size, specify the max. allowance of the mail size including the attached file. Mails exceeding the maximum allowance are removed. If a mail is separated, this setting is disabled.	Receiving limit of the server
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the administrator address. If the administrator address is not specified, specify it at "Machine Setting".	Address for the adminis- trator
Binary Division	To divide the mail size, select "ON". If the mail software used for receiving mails does not have the mail restore function, the mails may not be read.	Restore function of the mail soft
Divided Mail Size	To divide the mail, specify a divided mail size.	Receiving limit of the server

2.34.3 Total Counter Notification Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Total Counter Notification Setting".

KONICA MINOLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count	Total Counter Notific:	ation Setting			
▶ ROM Version	Model Name				
▶ Import/Export					
Status Notification Setting	Schedule Setting Schedule 1				
Total Counter Notification	C Dayly				
Setting	Interval of Day(s)	1 (1-31)		
▶ Machine Setting	C Weekly				
Online Assistance	Interval of Wee	k(s)	1 (1-6)		
▶ Date/Time Setting	Day of the We	ek	Mon 🗠		
▶ Timer Setting	Monthly				
▶ Network TWAIN	Interval of Mon	th(s)	1(1-6)		
▶ Reset	Date of the Mo	nth	1(1-31)		
External Memory Function	Schedule 2				
Settings	C Dayly Interval of Day(1 4 20		
Header/Footer Registration	- C Weekly	5)	1(1-31)		
	Interval of Wee	k(s)	1 (1-6)		
	Day of the We		Mon 🗸		
	Monthly				
	Interval of Mon	th(s)	1 (1-6)		
	Date of the Mo	nth	1 (1-31)		
	Register Notification Address 1	Address			
	E-mail Address	[
	🗌 Notifies by Sche	dule1			
	🗌 Notifies by Sche	dule2			
	Address 2				
	E-mail Address				
	□ Notifies by Sche				
	☐ Notifies by Sche Address 3	aulê2			
	E-mail Address	Г			
	Notifies by Sche	dule1			
	Notifies by Sche				
			Send Now	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Model Name	Specify the model name indicated in the notification mes- sage (up to 20 characters).	
Schedule Setting	Specify the conditions for the notification schedule. Sched- ules 1 and 2 can be registered with different settings.	Notification schedule
Register Notification Ad- dress	Specify the notification addresses (up to 320 characters). Select the desired notification schedule.	Notification address

2.34.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

→ Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 2-33.

2.34.5 SMTP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for SMTP authentication.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 2-34.

2.34.6 POP before SMTP

→ Specify the settings for POP before SMTP.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 2-35.

2.34.7 POP over SSL

→ Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 2-36.

2.34.8 APOP Authentication

→ Specify the settings for APOP authentication.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 2-38.

2.34.9 Meter Count

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Meter Count".
- 3 The counter information managed by the machine can be displayed.

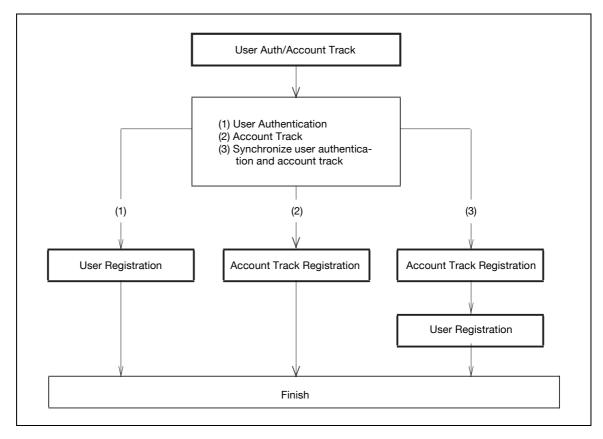
KONICA MINOLTA	í G	Administrator						Logout	?
Score Web Connec	tion e	Ready to Scan							
Model Name: bizhub C353		Ready to Print							C)
Maintenance S	ecurity	Box	Print Set	tina	Store A	ddress		Network	
► Meter Count		Total Counter							
► ROM Version		Total	0			1			
		Total Duplex	0						
▶ Import/Export		# of Originals	0						
Status Notification Setti	ng	# of Used Paper	0						
Total Counter Notificati Setting	on	Copy Counter							
▶ Machine Setting			Full Color	Black	Single Color	2 C	olor	Total	
▶ Online Assistance		Total	0	0	0	0		0	_
		Large Size	0	0	0	0		0	
▶ Date/Time Setting		Print Counter							
▶ Timer Setting			Full Color			2 Color		Fotal	
Network TWAIN		Total	0	0		0 0)	_
▶ Reset		Large Size	0	U		U	L)	
▶ External Memory Funct	ion	Scan / Fax Counter							_
Settings			Print (Full Cold	n)	Print (Black)		Scan	s	
▶ Header/Footer Registra	tion	Total	0	,	0		0		_
		Large Size	0		0		0		
		Fax TX	0						
		Fax RX	0			-			
		Total (Copy + Print)							
			Full Colo	r	Black		2 Col	or	
		Total	0		0		0		
		Paper Size / Type C	ounter						
		Paper Size	Paper			Count			
		A3	Not Sp			0			_
		B4 A4	Not Sp Not Sp			0			-
		B5	Not Sp			0			-
		A5	Not Sp			0			
		8" x 13"	Not Sp			0			_
		8K	Not Sp			0			_
		16K B6	Not Sp Not Sp			0			_
		Others	Not Sp			0			-
			proc op			1			

2.35 Limiting users using this machine (Machine authentication)

→ Specify settings for using this machine using machine authentication.

Specify user authentication and account track settings in order to control the use of this machine. User authentication settings are specified to manage individuals, and account track settings are specified to manage groups and multiple users. By specifying both user authentication and account track settings, the number of prints made by each account can be managed for each individual user.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

For details on the machine authentication, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations.

2.35.1 User Auth/Account Track

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "User Auth/Account Track".

		Administrator			Logout	?	
Le scope Web Connection		ready to Scan	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ	
Maintenance	Security	Вох	Print Setting	J Store Address	Network		
Authentication		User Auth/Account	Track				
User Auth/Acc	count Track	General Settings		ON (MFP)	~		
► External Serv	rer .	Public User Access		Restrict	~		
Registration		Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory)		60 Minute (1-60)			
Default Funct Permission	ion	Account Track		ON 🛩			
▶ User Registration		Account Track Input Method Account		Account Name & Pas	ssword 🖌		
Account Track Registration		Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track		Synchronize 💌			
► SSL/TLS Setting		Number of Counters Users	Assigned for	500 (1-999)			
▶ Address Reference Setting		When Number of Jobs Reach					
Permission of Ad Change	ldress	Maximum					
▶ Auto Logout					OK Cancel		
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					_	
		_					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (MFP)".	
Public User Access	Specify whether to allow public users.	Whether to allow public users
Account Track	To use the account track function, select "ON".	Whether to use Account Track
Account Track Input Method	To use the account track function, select the desired authen- tication method.	
Synchronize User Au- thentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication and account track func- tions, select "Synchronize".	Whether to synchronize the user authentication and account track func- tions
Number of Counters As- signed for Users	To use the user authentication and account track, specify the number of counters assigned for users.	
When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum	Specify the operation that is performed when the number of copies or printouts have reached its maximum.	

Q

Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the authentication method cannot be set to "OFF". In addition, "Public User Access" is set to "Restrict".

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "User Registration".
- 3 Select [New Registration].

🔵 ΚΟΝΙζΑ ΜΙΝΟΙΤΑ	🌆 Administrator	Logout
Stage Web Connection	Ready to Scan	
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print	Ŷ
Maintenance Secur	ity Box Print S	Setting Store Address Network
Authentication	User Registration	
User Registration	No.	
Account Track Registration	User Name	
▶ SSL/TLS Setting	E-mail Address	
Address Reference Setting	User Password	
Permission of Address Change	Retype User Password	
▶ Auto Logout	Function Permission	
Administrator Password	Сору	Allow
Setting	Scan	Allow 💌
	—— Save to External Memory	Allow
	Fax	Allow V
	Print User Box	Allow Y
	Oser Box Print Scan/Fax from User Box	Allow V
	Output Permission(Print)	
	Color	Allow 🗸
	Black	Allow 🗸
	Output Permission(TX)	
	Color	Allow 💌
	Maria Allanana - Orit	
	Max. Allowance Set Total Allowance Total	
	1	(1-9999999)
	Individual Allowance	
	Color	
	1	(1-9999999)
	Black	
	Box Administration	(1-9999999)
	Box Administration	
	1	(0-1000)
	Limiting Access to Destinations	
	Reference Allowed Group	Search from List
		Pagistarad Pafaranca Graun Number
		Registered Reference Group Number
		V Total0
	Access Allowed Level	
	NET A RECESS MILLINGE FEAR	0 💌
		OK Cancel

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Account Track Registration".
- 3 Select [New Registration].

KONICA MINOLTA	Administrator				Logout	?
Scope Web Connection	Ready to Scan					
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print					C)
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store A	ddress	Network	
▶ Authentication	Account Track Regist	ration				
User Registration	No.					
Account Track Registration	Account Name					
▶ SSL/TLS Setting	Password					
Address Reference Setting	Retype Password					
Permission of Address Change	Output Permission(Print)					
► Auto Logout	Color		Allow 🗸			
Administrator Password	Black		Allow 🗸			
Setting	Output Permission(TX)					
	Color		Allow 👻			
	Max. Allowance Set					
	Total Allowance					
	🗖 Total	4				
	Individual Allowance	1		(1-9999999)		
	Color					
		1		(1-9999999)		
	🗖 Black					
		1		(1-9999999)		
	Box Administration					
	🗖 Box Count	4		-		
		1		(0-1000)		
					K Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Enter the registration number.	
Account Name	Enter the account name.	
Password	Enter the password.	
Retype Password	Enter the password again.	
Output Permission (Print)	Specify whether to allow color or black output when printing.	
Output Permission (TX)	Specify whether to allow sending color images.	
Max. Allowance Set	Displays whether to limit the max. allowance of output.	

Q Detail

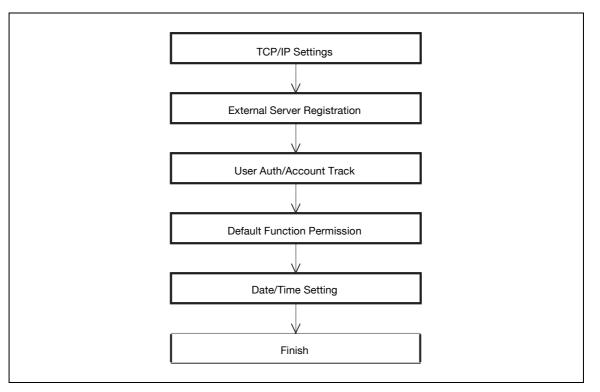
If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations.

2.36 Limiting users using this machine (Active Directory)

→ Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using Active Directory.

To perform authentication using Active Directory of Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.36.1 TCP/IP Settings

- → Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.
 - When using Active Directory, specify a DNS server synchronized with Active Directory in the DNS Server Settings of this machine.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "External Server Registration".
- 4 Select [Edit].

E KONICA MINE Scope Web Co	O LINY	Administrator			Logout	<u> </u>
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print			6	2
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	_
Authentication		External Server Regis	stration			
▶ User Auth/Acc	ount Track	No.	1			
External Serve	er	External Server Name	L			
Registration		External Server Type Active Directory	4	Active Directory 👻		
Default Functi Permission	on	Default Domain Nar	ne [
User Registration		NTLM	-			
► Account Track Re	gistration	Default Domain Nar	ne 🗌			
▶ SSL/TLS Setting		NDS	Г			
► Address Reference	e Setting	Default NDS Tree N Default NDS Conte:				
Permission of Ad	dress	LDAP				
Change		Server Address	ſ	Please check to ent	er host name.	
▶ Auto Logout			Γ			
Administrator Pas Setting	ssword	Port No.		(1-65535)		
-		🗖 Enable SSL	-			
		Port No.(SSL)	L	(1-65535)		
		Search Base	L			
		Timeout	L D	sec. (5-300)		
		Authentication Metl Search Attribut		Simple 👻		
		Search Attribut	۶ L			
				1		
				l	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "Active Directory".	
Default Domain Name	Enter the default domain name.	Default domain name

2.36.3 User Auth/Account Track

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "User Auth/Account Track".

<u>File Edit View Favorites Too</u>	is <u>H</u> elp		
	🌆 Administrator	Logo	out 💡
<u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>			

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory)	Specify the ticket hold time.	

Г

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "Default Function Permission".

	DLTA	& Admin	istrator				Logout	?	
Model Name: bizhub (to Scan to Print					Ŷ	
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Settin	g St	ore Address	Netwo	rk	
▼ Authentication		Default	Function Pe	ermission					
▶ User Auth/Acco	ount Track	Сору			Allow	*			
External Serve		Scan			Allow	~			
			Contrada - Sec Sec.						
		·				217			
					···				
					• ···· 240 .000		- many -		200 PC

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Сору	Limits functions available to authorized users on this ma-	
Scan	chine. Specify whether to allow each function.	
Save to External Memory		
Fax		
Print		
User Box		
Print Scan/Fax from User Box		

2.36.5 Date/Time Setting

→ When using Active Directory, specify the date and time on this machine.



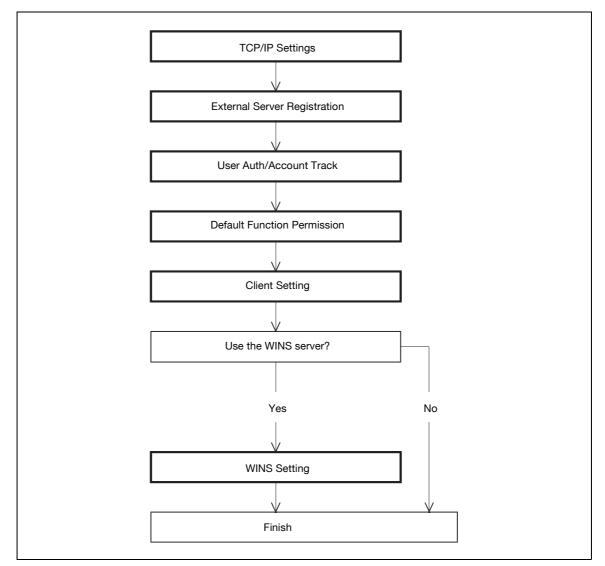
For details, refer to "Specifying the date and time on this machine" on page 2-22.

2.37 Limiting users using this machine (Windows domain/workgroup)

→ Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using NTLM authentication.

To perform authentication using NTLM when using Windows NT4.0 or using Active Directory of Windows 2000 Server or Windows Server 2003, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.37.1

TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "External Server Registration".
- 4 Select [Edit].

🔵 ΚΟΝΙζΑ ΜΙΝΟΙΤΑ	Administrator		Logout ?
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Scan		Ċ
Maintenance Security	Box Print Set	ting Store Address	Network
▼ Authentication	External Server Registration		
▶ User Auth/Account Track	No.	2	
► External Server	External Server Name		
Registration	External Server Type Active Directory	NTLM v1	
Default Function Permission	Default Domain Name		
User Registration	NTLM		
Account Track Registration	Default Domain Name		
▶ SSL/TLS Setting	NDS		
Address Reference Setting	Default NDS Tree Name		
Permission of Address	Default NDS Context Name LDAP		
Change	Server Address	🔲 Please check to enter	host name.
▶ Auto Logout			
Administrator Password Setting	Port No.	(1-65535)	
seung	Enable SSL		
	Port No. (SSL)	(1-65535)	
	Search Base		
	Timeout	sec. (5-300)	
	Authentication Method	Simple 🔽	
	Search Attribute		
		Г	OK Cancel

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NTLM v1" or "NTLM v2". NTLMv2 is applied from Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 4).	
Default Domain Name	Enter the default domain name. Enter the default domain name in uppercase letters.	Default domain name

2.37.3 User Auth/Account Track

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "User Auth/Account Track".

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help		<u>R</u>
	🍰 Administrator	Logout	?
Agene -			

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

2.37.4 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine.

Q

Detail For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 2-131.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "SMB Setting.".
- 3 Select "Client Setting".

	OLTA	🎧 Administrator			Logout	?
E Staff Web Co		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
	Security	_	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	L
► TCP/IP Setting		Client Setting				
▶ E-mail Setting		SMB TX Setting		ON 🗸		
▶ LDAP Setting		NTLM Setting User Authentication(NTLM	v1 ~		
▶ IPP Setting		Oser Authentication	INTER()			
▶ FTP Setting						1
▶ SNMP Setting					OK Cancel	
▼ SMB Setting						
▶ WINS Setting						
Client Setting						
▶ Print Setting						
► Direct Hosting	Setting					
▶ Web Service Sett	ings					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
► AppleTalk Setting	I					
▶ Network Fax Sett	ing					
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
► TCP Socket Settin						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
User Authentication (NTLM)	Select "ON".	

Q

Detail

Specifying "OFF" for "User authentication (NTLM)" synchronizes with the user authentication setting, switching to "ON (MFP)".

2.37.6 WINS Setting

→ To use the WINS server, specify settings for the WINS server.

Q Detail

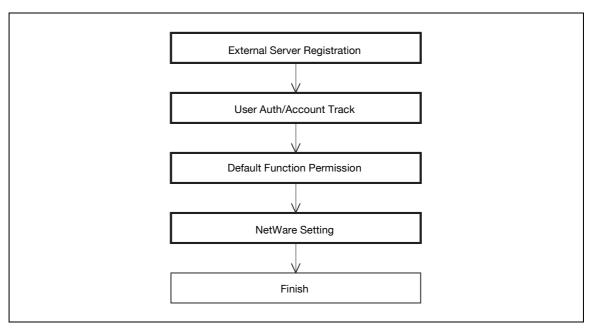
For details, refer to "WINS Setting" on page 2-28.

2.38 Limiting users using this machine (NDS)

→ Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using NDS.

To perform NDS-based authentication using NetWare 5.1 or NetWare 6.0, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

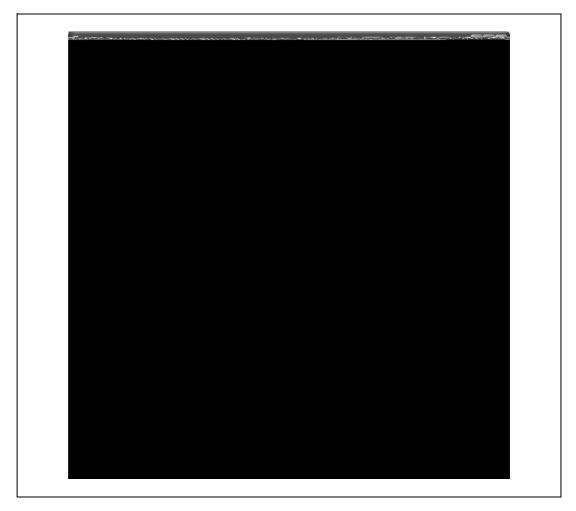
Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Q Detail

NDS is available only when IPX is used as the protocol. NDS is not available when IP is used.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "External Server Registration".
- 4 Select [Edit].



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NDS".	
Default NDS Tree Name	Enter the default NDS tree name.	
Default NDS Context Name	Enter the default NDS context name.	

2.38.2 User Auth/Account Track

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "User Auth/Account Track".

Security - Microsoft Intern File Edit View Favorites To		
	Administrator	 Logout ?

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

2.38.3 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 2-131.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "NetWare Setting".
- 3 Select "NetWare Setting".

	DLTA	🎧 Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Cor	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
	occurry		- Thirt botting	Store Address	Note of R	
► TCP/IP Setting		NetWare Setting * is reflected after reset.				
▶ E-mail Setting						
▶ LDAP Setting		IPX Setting*	L	ON 🕶		
▶ IPP Setting			,	when changing TCP/IP.)		
► FTP Setting		Ethernet Frame Type*	L	Auto Detect 👻		
▶ SNMP Setting		NetWare Print Mode* PServer		OFF 🗸		
▶ SMB Setting		Print Server Na	ame*			
▶ Web Service Setti	ings	Print Server Pa	assword*		=	
▶ Bonjour Setting		Polling Interval	*	1 sec.(1-65535)		
▼ NetWare Setting		Bindery/NDS S		NDS V		
► NetWare Settin	ıg	Bindery	Ŭ,			
▶ NetWare Status	s	File Se	erver Name*			
► AppleTalk Setting		NDS				
► Network Fax Setti	na		Context Name*			
▶ WebDAV Settings	0		ree Name*			
► OpenAPI Setting		Nprinter/Rprinter Print Server Na				
TCP Socket Setting		Printer Number		255 (D-255.255:Au	 	
F TCF SUCKET Settin	9	 User Authentication Se 		255 (0-255,255:Au	пој	
		- Oser Authentication Se	լուց			
						_
					OK Cancel	

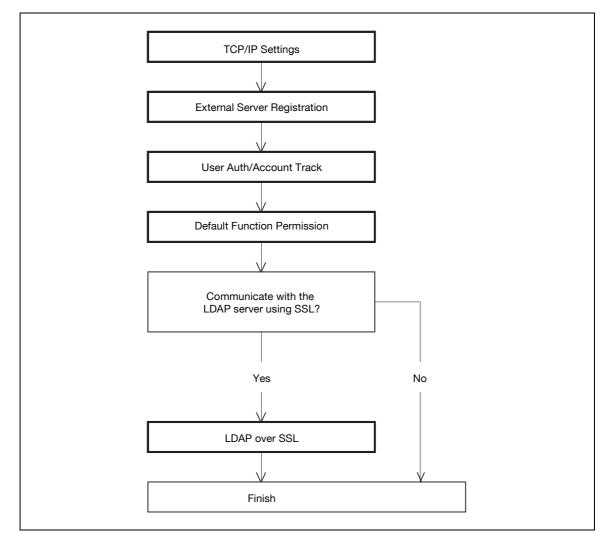
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
User Authentication Set- ting	Select "ON".	

2.39 Limiting users using this machine (LDAP)

→ Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using the LDAP server.

To perform authentication using the LDAP server, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.39.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "External Server Registration".
- 4 Select [Edit].

🔵 ΚΟΝΙζΑ ΜΙΝΟΙΤΑ	🎥 Administrator	Logout
Scope Web Connection	Ready to Scan	
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print	(2)
Maintenance Security	Box Print Settin	g Store Address Network
▼ Authentication	External Server Registration	
▶ User Auth/Account Track	No.	2
External Server	External Server Name	
Registration	External Server Type Active Directory	LDAP 👻
Default Function Permission	Default Domain Name	
User Registration	NTLM	
Account Track Registration	Default Domain Name	
▶ SSL/TLS Setting	NDS	
Address Reference Setting	Default NDS Tree Name	
Permission of Address	Default NDS Context Name	
Change	Server Address	Please check to enter host name.
▶ Auto Logout		
Administrator Password	Port No.	(1-65535)
Setting	Enable SSL	,
		(1-65535)
	Search Base	
	Timeout	sec. (5-300)
	Authentication Method	Simple 💌
	Search Attribute	
		OK Cancel

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "LDAP".	
Server Address	Specify the LDAP server address. (Format: "***.****, Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port No.	Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Search Base	Specify the search starting point in a hierarchical structure placed on the LDAP server. Searches are performed by also including the subdirectories lower than the starting point that was specified.	
Timeout	Specify the maximum wait time for a search operation.	
Authentication Method	Select the authentication method used for logging in to the LDAP server.	Authentication method for the server
Search Attribute	If "Digest-MD5" is selected as the authentication method, specify the search attribute.	

2.39.3 User Auth/Account Track

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "User Auth/Account Track".

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tool</u>	s <u>H</u> elp		R
KONICA MINOLTA	🌆 Administrator	Logout	?
<u>unteres ser a consecutor a con</u>			

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

2.39.4 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 2-131.

2.39.5 LDAP over SSL

External Server Registration

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Authentication".
- 3 Select "External Server Registration".
- 4 Select [Edit].
- **5** Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Enable SSL	To encrypt communication between this machine and the LDAP server using SSL, select the "Enable SSL" check box.	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL
Port Number (SSL)	Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

Action for Invalid Certificate

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "SSL/TLS Setting".
- 3 Select [Setup].
- 4 Select "Set Mode using SSL".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	2
Scope Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set Mode using SSL				
▶ User Registration	1	Mode using SSL/TLS	Α	dmin. Mode and User	Mode 🖌	
Account Track Res	egistration					
SSL/TLS Setting		Processing Method Action for Invalid Certifi	icate 🔽	Continue 👻		
▶ Address Referen	ce Setting	Action for invalid Certin				
Permission of Ad Change	dress				OK Cancel	_
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					

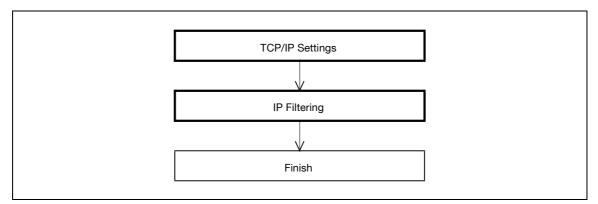
Q Detail

To specify settings for "Action for Invalid Certificate", create a certificate for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

- →
- Specify settings for performing IP address filtering.
 Performing IP address filtering limits access from specified IP addresses.
 Specify addresses from which this machine is accessible and inaccessible.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.40.1 **TCP/IP Settings**

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. →

Q
Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.40.2 IP Filtering

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "IP Filtering".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout ?	
Scope Web Co	nnection	ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		IP Filtering				
► TCP/IP Setting	,	Permit Access		Enable 👻		
► IP Filtering		Set1	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
IPsec		Set2	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
E-mail Setting		Set3	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
LDAP Setting		Set4	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
IPP Setting		Set5	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
FTP Setting		Deny Access		Enable 👻		
SNMP Setting		Set1	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
SMB Setting		Set2	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
Web Service Sett	ings	Set3	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
Bonjour Setting		Set4	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
NetWare Setting		Set5	0.0.0.0	- 0.0.0.0		
AppleTalk Setting	I					
Network Fax Sett	-				OK Cancel	
WebDAV Settings					Outeer	
OpenAPI Setting						
TCP Socket Setti	ng					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Permit Access	To specify permitted addresses, select "Enable".	
Set 1 to 5	Specify permitted addresses. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255)	Permitted addresses
Deny Access	To specify denied addresses, select "Enable".	
Set 1 to 5	Specify denied addresses. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255)	Denied addresses

→ Specifying settings for IPv6-based communication

To allocate the IPv6 address to this machine, use this setting. IPv6 can run simultaneously with IPv4. However, Ipv6 does not run independently.

When using this machine under the IPv6 environment, there are the following restrictions.

- Printing using SMB is not available (available for direct hosting service).
- Sending scan data using SMB is not available (available for direct hosting service).
- SMB browsing is not available.
- PageScope NDPS Gateway cannot be used.
- DHCPv6 cannot be used.
- IP filtering is not available.
- The printer driver installer cannot be used.
- PageScope Web Connection cannot be displayed with Flash.

TCP/IP Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "TCP/IP Setting".

	TΛ	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Conr	nection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C3		Ready to Print				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▼ TCP/IP Setting		TCP/IP Setting				
► TCP/IP Setting		* is reflected after reset.				
▶ IP Filtering		TCP/IP*	ON 🗸			
▶ IPsec		(Turn the main switch OFF		en changing TCP/IP.)		
▶ E-mail Setting		Network Speed	Auto	~		
▶ LDAP Setting		IP Address Setting Metho				
▶ IPP Setting			C DHC			
▶ FTP Setting			ARP.			
▶ SNMP Setting			Auto	P*		
▶ SMB Setting		IP Address	0.0.0.0			
▶ Web Service Setting	qs	Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0			
▶ Bonjour Setting	-	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0			
▶ NetWare Setting		IPv6	ON ¥			
► AppleTalk Setting		Auto IPv6 Setting* Link-Local Address	UN V			
Network Fax Setting	1	Global Address	::			1
▶ WebDAV Settings	,	Prefix Length				-
▶ OpenAPI Setting						_
► TCP Socket Setting		Gateway Address]
		RAW Port Number	9100			
		Port 2	9100	(1-65535)		
		Port 3	9113	(1-65535)		
		Port 4	9114	(1-65535)		
		Port 5	9115	(1-65535)		
		Port 6	9116	(1-65535)		
		Dynamic DNS Setting	Disable			
		Host Name	thames			
		DNS Domain Name Settir	g			
		DNS Domain Auto Ob		*		
		DNS Default Domain I				
		DNS Search Domain				
		DNS Search Domain				
		DNS Search Domain DNS Server Setting	Namej			
		DNS Server Auto Obt	ain Enable	*		
		Primary DNS Server	0.0.0.0]
		Secondary DNS Serve	er1 0.0.0.0]
		Secondary DNS Serve	er2 0.0.0.0]
		SLP Setting				
						_

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP/IP	Select "ON".	
IPv6	Select "ON".	
Auto IPv6 Setting	To automatically obtain the IPv6 address, select "ON".	Whether to automatically obtain the IPv6 address
Link-Local Address	Displays the link-local address generated from the MAC ad- dress.	
Global Address	When not automatically obtain the IPv6 address, specify the IPv6 global address.	IPv6 address
Prefix Length	When not automatically obtain the IPv6 address, specify the IPv6 global address prefix length.	Prefix length
Gateway Address	When not automatically obtain the IPv6 address, specify the IPv6 gateway address.	Gateway address

Q

Detail

If necessary, specify settings for DNS. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IPbased communication" on page 2-3.

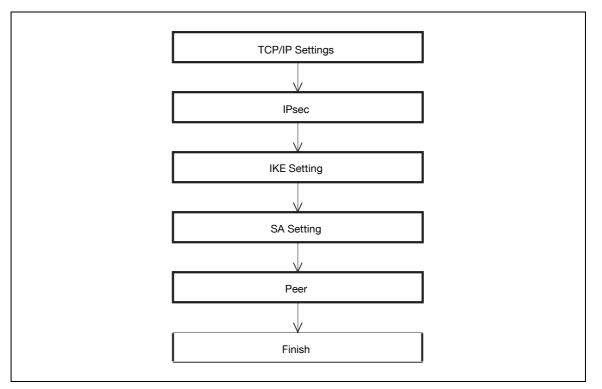
2.42 Communicating using IPsec

2

→ Specify settings for IPsec-based communication

Communicating using IPsec prevents falsification and disclosure of data by IP packet. This function ensure safer communication even if transport or application that does not support encryption is used

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.42.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.42.2 IPsec

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "IPsec".

KONICA MINOLTA	🎧 Administrator				Logout	
Scope Web Connection	Ready to Scan					
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				P.	
Maintenance Securi	ty Box		Print	Setting		
▼ TCP/IP Setting	IPsec					
► TCP/IP Setting	IPsec				ON 🐱	
▶ IP Filtering	IKE					
► IPsec	Key Validity				28800 sec. (80-604800)	
▶ E-mail Setting	Diffie-Hellma				Group 2 💌	
▶ LDAP Setting				t Delet	1	
▶ IPP Setting		1	Ed			
▶ FTP Setting		2	Ed			
▶ SNMP Setting		3	Ed			
▶ SMB Setting		4	Ed	it Dele	ete	
▶ Web Service Settings	SA					
▶ Bonjour Setting	Lifetime Afte	r Esta	ablishing	SA	3600 sec. (120-604800)	
▶ NetWare Setting		No.	Set Ed	t Delet		
▶ AppleTalk Setting		1	Ed	it Dele	ete	
▶ Network Fax Setting		2	Ed	it Dele	ete	
▶ WebDAV Settings		3	Ed	it Dele	ste	
▶ OpenAPI Setting		4	Ed	it Dele	ste	
▶ TCP Socket Setting		5	Ed	it Dele	ate	
		6	Ed	it Dele	ate	
		7	Ed	it Dele	ste	
		8	Ed	it Dele	ste	
	Peer					
		No. 1	Set Edi			
		2	Ed			
		2				
			Ed			
		4	Ed			
		5	Ed			
		6	Ed			
		7	Ed			
		8	Ed			
		9	Ed			
		10	Ed	it Dele	ete	
					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPsec	Select "ON".	

2.42.3 IKE Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "IPsec".
- 4 Select "IKE".
- 5 Select [Edit].

IKE Setting		
No.	1	
Encryption Algorithm	OFF 🛩	
Authentication Algorithm	OFF 💌	
	ОК	Cancel

Q

Detail

Up to four groups can be registered in "IKE".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Key Validity Period	Specify the validity period of a key generated when creating a control tunnel.	
Diffie-Hellman Group	Select "Diffie-Hellman Group".	
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm to be used when creating a control tunnel.	
Authentication Algorithm	Select the authentication algorithm to be used when creating a control tunnel.	

2.42.4 SA Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "IPsec".
- 4 Select "SA".
- 5 Select [Edit].

No.	1
Security Protocol	OFF 🛩
ESP Encryption Algorithm	OFF 😪
ESP Authentication Algorithm	OFF 🔛
AH Authentication Algorithm	OFF 🗸

Q Detail

Up to eight groups can be registered in "SA".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Lifetime After Establish- ing SA	Specify the validity period of a key generated when creating a communication tunnel.	
Security Protocol	Select the security protocol.	
ESP Encryption Algo- rithm	When "ESP" is selected for "Security Protocol", specify the ESP encryption algorithm.	
ESP Authentication Al- gorithm	When "ESP" is selected for "Security Protocol", specify the ESP authentication algorithm.	
AH Authentication Algo- rithm	When "AH" is selected for "Security Protocol", specify the AH authentication algorithm.	

2.42.5 Peer

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP/IP Setting".
- 3 Select "IPsec".
- 4 Select "Peer".
- 5 Select [Edit].

No. 1 Perfect Forward Secrecy OFF • Peer • Pre-Shared Key Text • Encapsulation Mode OFF •		•	
Pre-Shared Key Text	,	OFF 🗸	
	Peer		
Encapsulation Mode OFF	Pre-Shared Key Text		
	Encapsulation Mode	OFF 🗸	

Q Detail

Up to 10 peers can be registered in "Peer".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Perfect Forward Secrecy	To increase the IKE strength, select "ON".	
Peer	Specify the IP address of the peer.	IP address of the peer
Pre-Shared Key Text	Specify the Pre-Shared Key text shared with the peer.	
Encapsulation Mode	Specify the operation mode of IPsec.	

2.43 Using the TCP Socket/OpenAPI/FTP server function

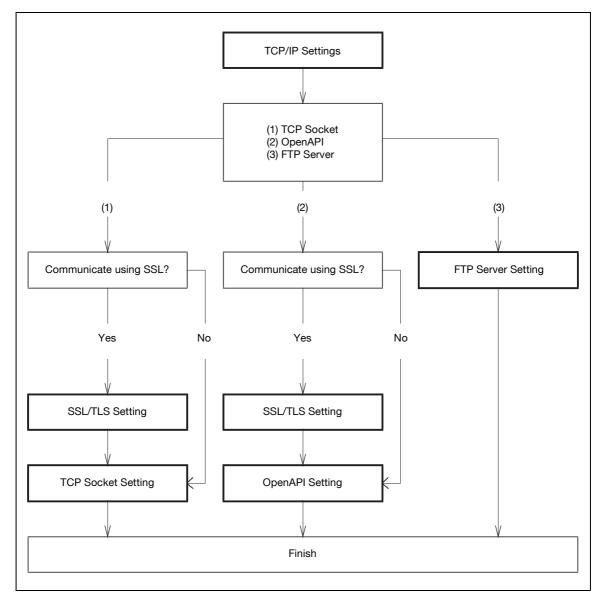
→ Specify settings for TCP Socket, OpenAPI, and FTP server of this machine.

TCP socket is used during data transmissions between the computer application and this machine.

To synchronize this machine with a different OpenAPI-based system, specify settings for OpenAPI.

This machine serves as an FTP server by specifying settings for the FTP server function of this machine. To use an application that synchronizes with this machine as an FTP client, use this setting.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



2.43.1 TCP/IP Settings

→ Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

Q Detail

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 2-3.

2.43.2 SSL/TLS Setting

→ Specify settings for SSL-based communication.

Q

Detail

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "TCP Socket Setting".

Model Name: bizhub C353 Ready to Scan Model Name: bizhub C353 Ready to Print Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Network TCP/IP Setting CfUrr the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket.) Network CDAP Setting CfUrr the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket.) Network IDAP Setting CfUrr the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket.) Network Port Number 59158 (1-65535) Port Number 59159 (1-65535) SNMP Setting Port No.(SSL) 59159 SMB Setting Port No.(ASCII Mode) SMB Setting OK	C KONICA MINOLTA	Administrator		Logout ?			
Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network ► TCP/IP Setting E-mail Setting LDAP Setting LDAP Setting Port Number Dysetting Port Number Dysetting Port No.(SSL) SMP Setting Port No.(ASCII Mode) Port No.(ASCII Mode) SMS Setting Bonjour Setting NetWare Setting	E Stage Web Connection	Keady to Scan	Ready to Scan				
TCP/IP Setting TCP Socket Setting E-mail Setting (Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket.) LDAP Setting TCP Socket IDP Setting Vise SSL/TLS PTP Setting Ort Number SNMP Setting Port No.(SSL) SMB Setting Port No.(ASCII Mode) SMB Setting Port No.(ASCII Mode) Bonjour Setting OK Cancel	Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print		Ċ			
E-mail Setting (Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket) LDAP Setting If TCP Socket Port Number 59158 IPP Setting Use SSL/TLS FTP Setting Port No.(SSL) SNMP Setting If TCP Socket(ASCII Mode) SMB Setting Port No.(ASCII Mode) Web Service Settings OK Cancel NetWare Setting OK Cancel	Maintenance Security	Box Print Setti	ng Store Address	Network			
► LDAP Setting Port Number [59158] (1-65535) [1-65535) [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535] [1-65535]	► TCP/IP Setting	TCP Socket Setting					
▶ LDAP Setting Port Number 59158 (1-65535) ▶ IPP Setting □ Use SSL/TLS ▶ ort No. (SSL) 59159 (1-65535) ▶ SMMP Setting ☞ TCP Socket(ASCII Mode) ▶ SMB Setting ● Port No. (ASCII Mode) 59160 (1-65535) ▶ Web Service Settings ○K Cancel ▶ NetWare Setting ○K Cancel	▶ E-mail Setting		, when changing TCP Socket.)				
▶ IPP Setting □ Use SSL/TLS ▶ FTP Setting □ Port No.(SSL) ▶ SMMP Setting ☞ TCP Socket(ASCII Mode) ▶ SMB Setting ▶ Port No.(ASCII Mode) ▶ Web Service Settings ○K Cancel	▶ LDAP Setting		59159 // C5525				
▶ FTP Setting Port No. (SSL) 59159 (1-65535) ▶ SNMP Setting ▶ TCP Socket(ASCII Mode) 59160 (1-65535) ▶ Meb Service Settings OK Cancel ▶ NetWare Setting OK Cancel	▶ IPP Setting		[39130 [1-65536]				
▶ SNMP Setting ✓ TCP Socket(ASCII Mode) ▶ SMB Setting Port No. (ASCII Mode) ▶ Web Service Settings ▶ Bonjour Setting ○K Cancel ▶ NetWare Setting ○K Cancel	▶ FTP Setting		59159 (1-65535)				
Web Service Settings Bonjour Setting NetWare Setting	▶ SNMP Setting	TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)					
► Bonjour Setting OK Cancel	▶ SMB Setting	Port No. (ASCII Mode)	59160 (1-65535)				
▶ NetWare Setting	▶ Web Service Settings						
	⊳ Bonjour Setting			OK Cancel			
AppleTalk Setting	▶ NetWare Setting		_				
	▶ AppleTalk Setting						
▶ Network Fax Setting	▶ Network Fax Setting						
▶ WebDAV Settings	▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting	▶ OpenAPI Setting						
► TCP Socket Setting							

Q

Detail

To use SSL/TLS, install the certificate in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP Socket	Select the "TCP Socket" check box.	
Port Number	Specify the port number.	
Use SSL/TLS	To use SSL/TLS, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Whether to use SSL/TLS
Port No. (SSL)	Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	

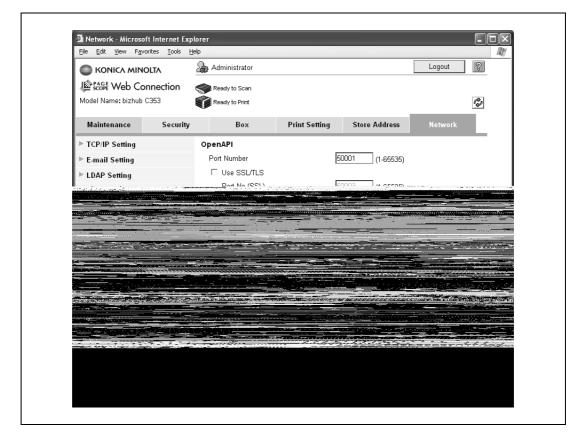
Q

Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the "Use SSL/TLS" check box is selected.

2.43.4 OpenAPI Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "OpenAPI Setting".



Q Detail

To use SSL/TLS, install the certificate in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 2-10.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Port Number	Specify the port number.	
Use SSL/TLS	To use SSL/TLS, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Use SSL/TLS?
Port No. (SSL/TLS)	Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	

Q

Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the "Use SSL/TLS" check box is selected.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab.
- 2 Select "FTP Setting".
- **3** Select "FTP Server Setting".

	DLTA	🖓 Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Cor		Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C		Ready to Print				C)
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► TCP/IP Setting		FTP Server				
▶ E-mail Setting		FTP Server		ON 🔽		
▶ LDAP Setting						-
▶ IPP Setting					OK Cancel	
▼ FTP Setting						
► FTP TX Setting						
► FTP Server Set	tting					
▶ SNMP Setting						
▶ SMB Setting						
▶ Web Service Setti	ngs					
▶ Bonjour Setting						
▶ NetWare Setting						
▶ AppleTalk Setting						
▶ Network Fax Setti	ng					
▶ WebDAV Settings						
▶ OpenAPI Setting						
▶ TCP Socket Settin	g					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
FTP Server	Select "ON".	

Q Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", "OFF" is selected.

2.44 Other items on the Maintenance tab

This section describes other items specifiable on the Maintenance tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

2.44.1 Using external memory

→ Specify settings for using external memory on this machine.

To use an external memory, this machine must be equipped with an optional local interface kit.

Connecting external memory to this machine allows sending scanned data to external memory and printing data in external memory.

Ø...

2

Reminder

The optional local interface kit is equipped with two USB connectors. As one is for optional connection, two sets of external memories cannot be connected at a time.

Do not pull out the external memory while a document is being saved to the external memory or being printed.

External Memory Function Settings

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "External Memory Function Settings".

KONICA MINOLTA	A star	dministrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Connect	ion 🧠	leady to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ť,	leady to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance S	ecurity	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count	Exte	rnal Memory F	unction Settings			
▶ ROM Version	Sa	we Document		OFF 🛩		
▶ Import/Export	Pr	int Document		ON 🛩		
Status Notification Setting	ng					_
Total Counter Notification Setting	n				OK Cancel	
▶ Machine Setting						
▶ Online Assistance						
▶ Date/Time Setting						
▶ Timer Setting						
▶ Network TWAIN						
▶ Reset						
External Memory Functi Settings	on					
▶ Header/Footer Registrat	ion					

Item	Definition
Save Document	To send scanned data to external memory, select "ON". To prevent data from being stolen, "OFF" is specified as default. To use an external mem- ory, select "ON".
Print Document	To print data in external memory, select "ON".

bizhub C203/C253/C353

- → Specify settings for the timer function of this machine.
 - Settings for the power save function and weekly timer function can be specified.

Power Save Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Timer Setting".
- 3 Select "Power Save Setting".

	IOLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
Score Web C	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Power Save Setting				
▶ ROM Version		Low Power Mode Setti	ng 15	Minute (2-24	0)	
▶ Import/Export		Sleep Mode Setting	20		0)	
Status Notification	on Setting	Power Save Key		Low Power		
Total Counter Ne Setting	otification		с 	Sleep		_
▶ Machine Setting					OK Cancel	1
▶ Online Assistand	e					-
▶ Date/Time Settir	g					
▼ Timer Setting						
► Power Save	Setting					
▶ Weekly Time	r Setting					
▶ Network TWAIN						
▶ Reset						
External Memory Settings	y Function					
▶ Header/Footer R	egistration					

Item	Definition
Low Power Mode Set- ting	Specify the time period before the machine enters Low Power mode.
Sleep Mode Setting	Specify the time period before the machine enters Sleep mode.
Power Save Key	Manually specify the setting for the power save function (Low Power or Sleep mode).

Weekly Timer Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Timer Setting".
- 3 Select "Weekly Timer Setting".

	🌆 Administrator			[Logout	?	
Stage Web Connection	Ready to Scan						
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print					Ŷ	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Ad	dress	Network		
▶ Meter Count	Weekly Timer Setti	ng					
▶ ROM Version	🗆 Use Weekly Time	r					
▶ Import/Export	Date Setting						
Status Notification Setting		2007 💌 April	✓ Setti	ng			
Total Counter Notification Setting	Work Time Sett	ing ON Time		OFF Time			
▶ Machine Setting	🗆 Sun	0 : 0]~	0	: 0		
▶ Online Assistance	🗖 Mon	0 : 0] ~	0	:		
▶ Date/Time Setting	Tue 🗆	0 : 0] ~	0	: 0		
▼ Timer Setting	□ Wed	0 : 0] ~	0	: 0		
▶ Power Save Setting	🗖 Thu	0 : 0] ~	0	: 0		
Weekly Timer Setting	🗆 Fri	0]~	0	. 0		
▶ Network TWAIN	□ Sat	0 : 0]~	0	. 0		
▶ Reset	🗆 Use Power Save						
External Memory Function Settings		Power Save Start Tim	°]~		e End Time : 🖸		
▶ Header/Footer Registration	🗆 Use Overtime Pas	ssword					
	-						
				0	OK Cancel		

Item	Definition
Use Weekly Timer	To use the weekly timer function, select this check box, and then specify the operating date and time. To display the screen for specifying dates, click [Setting]. Weekly setting and daily settings are possible.
Use Power Save	To use the power save function, select this check box, and then specify the starting and ending times for power saving
Use Overtime Password	To use the non-business hours password function, select this check box, and then specify the password.

2.44.3 Importing or exporting setting information

2.44.4 Resetting setting information

- → Reset machine settings.
 - Network settings, controller settings, and remote address settings can be reset.

Network Setting Clear

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Reset".
- 3 Select "Network Setting Clear".
- 4 To reset to the factory default network settings, click [Clear].

KONICA MINOLTA	2	Administrator 🎧			Logout	?
Scoff Web Connect	ion 🦪	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance S	ecurity	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Network Setting Cl	ear			
▶ ROM Version		Network setting is n	eturned to the factory d	efaults.		
▶ Import/Export					Clear	
Status Notification Setting	ng					_
Total Counter Notification Setting	n					
▶ Machine Setting						
▶ Online Assistance						
▶ Date/Time Setting						
▶ Timer Setting						
Network TWAIN						
▼ Reset						
Network Setting Clear	ır					
▶ Reset						
Format All Destination	n					
External Memory Functi Settings	on					
▶ Header/Footer Registrat	ion					

Q Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", this menu item does not appear.

Reset

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Reset".
- 3 Select "Reset".
- 4 To reset the controller, click [Reset].

	IOLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web C	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print			6	¢.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Reset				_
▶ ROM Version		Controller is reset.				
Import/Export					Reset	
Status Notification	on Setting					-
Total Counter Ne Setting	otification					
▶ Machine Setting						
▶ Online Assistand	e					
▶ Date/Time Settin	g					
▶ Timer Setting						
▶ Network TWAIN						
▼ Reset						
▶ Network Sett	ing Clear					
► Reset						
🕨 Format All De						
External Memory Settings	y Function					
▶ Header/Footer R	egistration					

Format All Destination

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Reset".
- 3 Select "Format All Destination".
- 4 To delete all destinations registered on the machine, click [Format].

	DLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub (353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Format All Destina	tion			
▶ ROM Version		All the registered de	estinations are deleted.			-
▶ Import/Export					Format	
Status Notification	Setting					
▶ Total Counter Not Setting	ification					
▶ Machine Setting						
▶ Online Assistance						
▶ Date/Time Setting	I					
▶ Timer Setting						
▶ Network TWAIN						
▼ Reset						
▶ Network Settin	g Clear					
▶ Reset						
► Format All Des	tination					
External Memory Settings	Function					
▶ Header/Footer Re	gistration					

 \rightarrow Specify the support information for the machine.

Online Assistance

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Online Assistance".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Profest Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Meter Count		Online Assistance				
▶ ROM Version		Contact Name		KONICA MINOLTA Cust	omer Sup	
▶ Import/Export		Contact Information				
Status Notificatio	n Setting	Product Help URL		http://pagescope.com		
▶ Total Counter No	tification	Corporate URL		http://konicaminolta.com	I	
Setting		Supplies and Access	ories			
▶ Machine Setting		Online Help URL				
Online Assistance	2	Driver URL				
▶ Date/Time Settin	g					_
▶ Timer Setting				Г	OK Cancel	1
Network TWAIN				L		_
▶ Reset						
External Memory Settings	Function					
▶ Header/Footer R	egistration					

Item	Definition
Contact Name	Specify the contact name for the machine (up to 63 characters).
Contact Information	Specify contact name information for the machine such as the phone number or URL (up to 127 characters).
Product Help URL	Specify the URL of the Web page for product information (up to 127 characters).
Corporate URL	Specify the URL of the Web page for corporate (up to 127 characters).
Supplies and Accesso- ries	Specify consumables supplier information (up to 127 characters).
Online Help URL	Specify the online help URL (up to 127 characters).
Driver URL	Specify the driver storage location (up to 127 characters).

2.44.6 Registering the header or footer

 \rightarrow To make copies on this machine, register a text that can be printed as a header or footer.

Header/Footer Registration

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select "Header/Footer Registration".
- 3 Select [Edit].

Web Connection Ready to Scan Model Name: bizhub C353 Ready to Print Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Net Meter Count Header/Footer Registration No. 1 Name Inport/Export ROM Version No. 1 Name Inport/Export Black Pages 1 Status Notification Setting Pages Ist Page Only Size Std. Pages Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Type None Pages Date/Time Setting Distribution Number Text Color Iteleader Network TWAIN External Memory Function Setting Date/Time Setting Print Print Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number Print Print Print Verser Name/Account Name Print Print Print Print Job Number Print Print Print Print		凝 Administrator			Logout	?
Model Name: bizhub C3S3 Ready to Print Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Net Meter Count Header/Footer Registration No. 1 Name Import/Export Color Black ✓ Import/Export Color Black ✓ Pages 1st Page Only ✓ Ist Page Only ✓ Total Counter Notification Setting Pages Status Notification Setting Date/Time Setting U7/1/23 ✓ Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting U7/1/23 ✓ Ist Page Only ✓ Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Ist Page Only ✓ Ist Page Only ✓ Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Ist Page Only ✓ Ist Page Only ✓ Pages Time Type None ✓ Ist Number ✓ Ist Page Only ✓ Ist Page Only ✓ PaterTime Setting Text None ✓ Ist Page Only ✓		On Ready to Scan				
Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Ner > Meter Count Header/Footer Registration 1 > ROM Version No. 1 > Import/Export Color Black ♥ > Status Notification Setting Pages 1st Page Only ♥ > Total Counter Notification Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting > Date/Time Setting Date Type 07/1/23 ♥ > Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ● > Timer Setting Distribution Number ● > Reset Start Number Specification (1-999999999) Header/Footer Registration 0 utput Method Number only > External Memory Function Setting Date/Time Setting Print ♥ > Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number Print ♥ > bate/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Print ♥ > bate/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Print ♥ > bate/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Print ♥ > bate/Time Setting Print ♥ Output Method Number > bate/Time Setting Distribution Number	*					Ŷ
▶ Meter Count Header/Footer Registration ▶ ROM Version No. 1 > Import/Export Color Black ♥ > Status Notification Setting Pages 1st Page Only ♥ > Total Counter Notification Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting > Machine Setting Date Type 107/1/23 ♥ > Online Assistance Time Type None ♥ > Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ● > Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ● > Timer Setting Text						V ²
No. 1 Import/Export Name Status Notification Setting Pages Total Counter Notification Setting Pages Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Distribution Number Timer Setting Text Network TWAIN Output Method Number Setting Date/Time Setting External Memory Function Setting Date/Time Setting Pleader/Footer Registration Distribution Number Pinit Mader Iteader/Footer Registration Distribution Number Footer Footer Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Job Number Print	Maintenance Se	curity Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
> Kom Version > Import/Export > Status Notification Setting > Total Counter Notification Setting > Total Counter Notification Setting > Machine Setting > Machine Setting > Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting > Date/Time Setting > Date/Time Setting Distribution Number > Timer Setting > Network TWAIN > Network TWAIN Status Number Specification Setting > External Memory Function Setting > Header/Footer Registration > Distribution Number Print Job Number Print Job Number Print Serial Number Print Verser String Date/Time Setting Print Serial Number Print Verser String Date/Time Setting Print Job Number Print Job Number Print Job Number Print <	▶ Meter Count	•				
▶ Import/Export Color Black ▼ ▶ Status Notification Setting Pages 1st Page Only ▼ ▶ Total Counter Notification Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting ▶ Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting ▶ Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ▼ ▶ Timer Setting Distribution Number ▼ ▶ Network TWAIN Output Method Number only ▶ Reset Start Number Specification (1-99999999) ▶ Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number ▼ ▶ Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number ▼ ↓ bot Number Print	ROM Version		1			
▶ Status Notification Setting Pages 1st Page Only ♥ ▶ Total Counter Notification Setting Size Sid. ♥ ▶ Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting ▶ Online Assistance Time Type None ♥ ▶ Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ● ▶ Timer Setting Output Method Number only ▶ Network TWAIN Output Method Number only ▶ Reset Start Number Specification (1-999999999) ▶ Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number ● ▶ Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number ● ▶ Goter Trime Setting ● ● > Header/Footer Registration ● ● > Stati Number ● ● > Job Number ● ● > Job Number ● ● > Serial Number ● ● > Footer String ● ● ■ ● ● ● ■ ● ● ● ■ ● ● ● ■ ● ●	▶ Import/Export					
Pages 1st Page Only ♥ Setting Size Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Online Assistance Time Type Date/Time Setting Distribution Number Timer Setting Output Method Network TWAIN Output Method Network TWAIN Output Method Reset Start Number Specification Header/Footer Registration Oate/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Print Job Number Print	Status Notification Settine	a				
Setting Size Sid. ▼ Machine Setting Date/Time Setting Date Type Date/Time Setting Distribution Number Timer Setting Text Network TWAIN Output Method Number only Reset Start Number Specification (1-99999999) Header Header Header/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting Print ▼ Job Number Date/Time Setting Print ▼ Job Number Print ▼ Job Number Footer Footer String Eterial Number Footer String Date/Time Setting Print ▼ Job Number Print ▼ Job Number Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Print ▼ Job Number Job Number Print ▼ Job Number Job Number Print ▼ Job Number Job Number Print ▼ Job Number		Pages				
▶ Machine Setting Date Type 07/1/23 ♥ ▶ Online Assistance Time Type None ♥ ▶ Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ● ▶ Timer Setting Text		Size	St	:d. 💙		
▶ Online Assistance Time Type None ♥ ▶ Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ▶ Timer Setting Text	▶ Machine Setting	-				
▶ Date/Time Setting Distribution Number ▶ Timer Setting Text ▶ Network TWAIN Output Method Number only ▶ Reset Start Number Specification (1-999999999) ▶ External Memory Function Settings Date/Time Setting Print ♥ ▶ Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number Print ♥ > Header/Footer Registration Distribution Number Print ♥ > User Name/Account Name Print ♥ Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print ♥ Date/Time Setting Print ♥ Job Number Distribution Number Print ♥ Distribution Number Job Number Print ♥ Job Number Job Number Print ♥ Job Number Job Number Job Number Print ♥ Job Number Print ♥ Job Number Job Number Print ♥ Job Number						
▶ Timer Setting Text ▶ Network TWAIN Output Method Number only ▶ Reset Start Number Specification (1-99999999) ▶ External Memory Function Settings Header Image: Comparison of the comparis			No	one 🚩		
▶ Network TWAIN Output Method Number only ▶ Reset Start Number Specification (1-99999999) ▶ External Memory Function Settings Header Image: Comparison of the setting ▶ Header/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting Print ♥ > Date/Time Setting Print ♥ Job Number > Serial Number Print ♥ Serial Number > User Name/Account Name Print ♥ > Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Date/Time Setting Print ♥ Job Number > Job Number Print ♥ Job Number	-					
▶ Reset Start Number Specification (1-99999999) ▶ External Memory Function Settings Header ▶ Header/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting Print ♥ ▶ Ideader/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting Print ♥ ▶ User Name/Account Name Print ♥ ▶ Footer Footer String ■ Date/Time Setting Print ♥ ▶ Ooter String Date/Time Setting ■ Date/Time Setting Print ♥ ■ Doter String Date/Time Setting ■ Date/Time Setting Print ♥	-			imber only	*	
▶ External Memory Function Settings Header ▶ Header/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting □ Distribution Number Print □ Job Number Print □ Job Number Print □ Serial Number Print □ Ver Name/Account Name Print □ Footer Footer □ Date/Time Setting Print □ Date/Time Setting Print □ Distribution Number Print □ Date/Time Setting Print □ Distribution Number Print			_			
▶ External Memory Function Settings Header String ▶ Header/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting Print ✓ Job Number Print Job Number Print Serial Number Print Ver Name/Account Name Print Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Date/Time Setting Print Job Number Print Job Number Print Job Number Print	▶ Reset		Lincation	(1-9999	19999)	
▶ Header/Footer Registration Date/Time Setting Print ✓ Distribution Number Print ✓ Job Number Print ✓ Serial Number Print ✓ Vuser Name/Account Name Print ✓ Footer ✓ ✓ Date/Time Setting Print ✓ Date/Time Setting Print ✓ Distribution Number Print ✓ Job Number Print ✓		n	Г			
Distribution Number Print v Job Number Print v Serial Number Print v User Name/Account Name Print v Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print v Distribution Number Print v Job Number Print v	-	Data (Tima Satting	Pr	int 🗸		
Job Number Print Serial Number Print User Name/Account Name Print Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Distribution Number Print Job Number Print Print	Header/Footer Registration	on C				
Serial Number Print User Name/Account Name Print Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Distribution Number Print Job Number Print						
User Name/Account Name Print Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Distribution Number Print Job Number Print						
Footer Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Distribution Number Print Job Number Print Print						
Footer String Date/Time Setting Print Distribution Number Print Job Number Print						
Date/Time Setting Print Distribution Number Print Job Number Print			Г			
Distribution Number Print V Job Number Print V			Pr	int 🗸		
Job Number Print		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
		Job Number	Pr	int 🗸		
Senar Number Finit Y		Serial Number				
User Name/Account Name		User Name/Accou				
						_
OK				1	OK Cancel	1

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Specify the registration name.
Color	Specify the color.
Pages	Select the pages to be printed.
Size	Specify the size.
Date/Time Setting	Specify the date and time formats.

Item	Definition
Distribution Number	Specify the distribution number text. Select the output format, and then specify the start- ing number.
Header/Footer	Specify whether to print the following items. Header String/Footer String (up to 40 characters each) Date/Time Setting Distribution Number Job Number Serial Number User Name/Account Name

2.44.7 Checking the ROM version

→ Check the ROM version of this machine.

ROM Version

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab.
- 2 Select ROM Version.
- 3 Check the ROM version of this machine.

Webe Connection Servery to scentify Ready to Print Model Name: bizhub C333 Ready to Scentify Box Print Setting Store Address Network Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network Meter Count RCM Version MFP Controller BOOT Program MFP Controller BOOT Program MFP Controller BOOT Program MFP Controller SubSet Program AD2EDY0-0100-F00-04(00) Status Notification Setting Operation PANEL Message Data AD2EDY0-0100-F00-04(00) Status Notification Setting PRT 0006000-000 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller2 FAX Board Controller2 IR 0006000-000 PRT 0123456789:;< -0123.456(7) Panel Micro-Computer A0000008900-600-00 OL Panel Micro-Computer A002E0Y0-1000-F00-04(00) Printer Controller Panel Micro-Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller A02E0Y0-1000-F00-04(00) Printer Controller-Demo Page A00.0Y0-3200-600-00 Printer Controller-Demo Page A00.0Y0-3200-600-00 Printer Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller Font 002E0Y0-6300-F00-0(00) Pri	KONICA MINOLTA	Administrator			Logout	?	
Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network Meter Count ROM Version MFP Controller BOOT Program MFP Controller BOOT Program MIPP Controller SubSet Program MFP Controller SubSet Program AD2E0 Y0-0100-F00-04(00) Status Notification Setting Operation PANEL Message Data AD2ESIM-8100-F00-04 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller2 IR Machine Setting PRT 0123456-789:-; <=-01(23) Online Assistance PRT 0123456-789:-; <=-01(23) Date/Time Setting Panel Micro-Computer AD00000-8900-600-00 Primer Controller ADF System Controller Network TWAIN Printer Controller Font 0000 Printer Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller-Demo Page MID PSVC AD2E0Y0-5100-F00-05(00) PSWC AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) PSWC Header/Footer Registration MIB F External Controller IF TCP/Socket AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Operation PANEL Operation PANEL CSRC AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-01	State Web Connection	I Ready to Scan					
▶ Meter Count ROM Version ▶ ROM Version MFP Controller BOOT Program ▶ Import/Export MFP Controller SubSet Program ▶ Import/Export MFP Controller > Status Notification Setting Operation PANEL Message Data > Total Counter Notification Setting PAX Board Controller1 > Total Counter Notification Setting PRT > Machine Setting PRT > Date/Time Setting PRT > Date/Time Setting Panel Micro-Computer > Network TWAIN Printer Controller > Reset Printer Controller > Printer Controller Controller Demo Page AD000000000000000000000000000000000000	Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ	
> ROM Version MFP Controller BOOT Program MFP Controller SubSet Program > Import/Export MFP Controller SubSet Program MFP Controller > Status Notification Setting Operation PANEL Message Data FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller2 A02ESIM-8100-F00-04(00) > Total Counter Notification Setting PRT 000000000 > Machine Setting PRT 0123465-789:;<=01(23) > Online Assistance Finisher 456789:;<=0-123.45(67) > Date/Time Setting Panel Micro-Computer A00000-0000 > Timer Setting LCT 23465789:012-345-67(89) > Network TWAIN Printer Controller A02EDY0-01000-F00-04(00) > Printer Controller A0120Y0-3E00-G00-00 > LCT 2346578-9012-345-67(89) > System Controller A02E0Y0-1000-F00-04(00) > Printer Controller A0120Y0-3E00-G00-00 MIO 4037-5000-D00-02:000(00) > PSWC A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) > PSWC A02E0Y0	Maintenance Security	Вох	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
Non Version MFP Controller SubSet Program Import/Export MFP Controller SubSet Program MFP Controller A02EDY0-0100-F00-04(00) Status Notification Setting Paration PANEL Message Data A02ESIM-8100-F00-04 Total Counter Notification Setting FAX Board Controller2 A02ESIM-8100-F00-04 Machine Setting PRT 0123456-789:; <=-01(23)	▶ Meter Count	ROM Version					
Import/Export MFP Controller A02E0Y0-0100-F00-04(00) Status Notification Setting Operation PANEL Message Data FAX Board Controller1 A02ESIM-8100-F00-04 Total Counter Notification Setting FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller2 IR Machine Setting PRT 0123456-789:-;<=-01(23)	ROM Version						
Status Notification Setting Operation PANEL Message Data FAX Board Controller1 AD2ESVIM-8100-F00-04 Total Counter Notification Setting FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller1 FAX Board Controller2 IR 00006000-000 Machine Setting PRT 0123456-789:-;<=-01(23)	▶ Import/Export		rogram	402E0V0.0100.E00.0	u(nn)		
> Total Counter Notification Setting FAX Board Controller2 IR 000G000-000 > Machine Setting PRT 0123456-789:-;<=-01(23)		Operation PANEL Messa	ge Data		• ,		
Setting IR 0006000-000 Machine Setting PRT 0123456-789:-;<=-01(23)	Total Counter Notification						
> Online Assistance ADF Finisher 456789:-;<=0-123-45(67)	Setting			000G000-000			
Online Assistance Finisher 456789::(<=0.123.45(67) Date/Time Setting Panel Micro-Computer A00J000-8900-6900-00 Timer Setting LCT 2345678-9012-345-67 (89) Network TWAIN Printer Controller API_SIM_VerR Printer Controller API_SIM_VerR Printer Controller 0000 Printer Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller-Font 0000 PSWCC A02E0Y0-5100-00000) PSWC A02E0Y0-5100-00000 MIB IF External Controller IF TC/PSocket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-0000) Open API A02E0Y0-6300-F00-0000) Open API A02E0Y0-6300-F00-01 CSRC A02E0Y0-8300-F00-01	▶ Machine Setting	PRT		0123456-789:-;<=-01	(23)		
> Date/Time Setting Panel Micro-Computer A00.000-9900-G00.00 > Timer Setting LCT 2345676-9012-345-67(89) > Network TWAIN System Controller AD2E0Y0-1000-F00-04(00) > Reset Printer Controller-Controller API_SIM_VerR > Printer Controller-Font 0000 > External Memory Function Settings MIO 4037-5000-D00-02-000(00) > Header/Footer Registration MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-03(00) Open API AD2E0Y0-8300-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	▶ Online Assistance						
> Timer Setting LCT 2345678-9012-345-57(89) > Network TWAIN System Controller A02E0Y0-1000-F00-04(00) > Reset Printer Controller-Font 0000 > Printer Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller-Font > Reset Printer Controller-Demo Page A020100-3E00-600-00 > Header/Footer Registration MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-7000-F00-03(00) Open API Open API A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC	▶ Date/Time Setting						
> Innel setting System Controller AD2EDY0-1000-F00-04(00) > Network TWAIN Printer Controller API_SIM_VerR > Reset Printer Controller-Font 0000 > External Memory Function Settings Printer Controller-Demo Page AD02D0-2600-00 > MIO 4037-5000-000-02-000(00) PSWC > Header/Footer Registration MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket AD2EDY0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API AD2EDY0-7000-F00-03(00) Open API Open API AD2EDY0-8000-F00-01 CSRC	3						
Network TWAIN Printer Controller API_SIM_VerR Preset Printer Controller-Font 0000 Printer Controller-Demo Page ADUJ0Y0-3E00-G00-00 MIO 4037-5000-D00-02-000(00) PSWC AD2E0Y0-5100-F00-05(00) MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket TCP/Socket AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Oper API AD2E0Y0-6300-F00-03(00) Operation PANEL AD2E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	•						
Kest Printer Controller-Demo Page A00J0Y0-3E00-G00-00 External Memory Function Settings MIO 4037-5000-000-02-000(00) PSWC A02E0Y0-5100-F00-05(00) MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket CP/Socket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-6300-F00-03(00) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	Network TWAIN	Printer Controller			• •		
External Memory Function Settings MIO 4037-5000-D00-02-000(00) PSWC A02E0Y0-5100-F00-05(00) MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	▶ Reset						
Settings 4037300020002000020000000 PSWC A02E0Y0-5100-F00-05(00) IPP IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket Open API A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-6300-F00-03(00) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	External Memory Function		age				
Header/Footer Registration MIB IF IPP IF External Controller IF TCP/Socket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-7000-F00-03(00) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC					· · /		
External Controller IF TCP/Socket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-7000-F00-03(00) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	▶ Header/Footer Registration			A02E010-3100-100-0	.5(00)		
TCP/Socket A02E0Y0-6300-F00-00(00) Open API A02E0Y0-7000-F00-03(00) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC	-	IPP IF					
Open API A02E0Y0-7000-F00-03(0) Operation PANEL A02E0Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC CSRC		External Controller IF					
Operation PANEL A02E0 Y0-8000-F00-01 CSRC					• •		
CSRC							
				A02E0Y0-8000-F00-0	11		
PIC A02E00W-8200-F00-02							
		PIC		AU2EUUW-820U-F0U-	J2		
		—		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-		
					-	-	

2.45 Other items on the Security tab

This section describes other items specifiable on the Security tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

2.45.1 Limiting accessible destinations by user

- → Register reference allowed groups and specify whether to allow reference to public users.
 - Specifying the reference allowed group and the access allowed level for destinations to be registered limits destinations to be displayed on an accessing user basis at the time of user authentication or logging in to public mode.



Detail

For details on limiting access to destinations, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations.

When registering a user, specify groups accessible to the user and reference allowed level. For details, refer to "User Registration" on page 2-125.

Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination to be registered when registering an address book destination and reference allowed level. For details, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 2-182.

Reference Allowed Group Registration

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Address Reference Setting".
- 3 Select "Reference Allowed Group Registration".
- 4 Select [Edit].

KONICA MINOLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Scan				Ø
Maintenance Securit	y Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication User Registration Account Track Registration	Reference Allowed No. Reference Allowed (1			

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Reference Allowed Group Name	Specify the reference allowed group name (up to 24 characters).
Access Allowed Level	Specify the access allowed level for the group.

Public User Reference Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Address Reference Setting".
- 3 Select "Public User Reference Setting".
- 4 Specify the destination access right of public users.
 - When "Reference Allowed Group" is selected, click [Search from List], and then select a reference allowed group from the list.
 - When "Access Allowed Level" is selected, specify a level.

	IOLTA	Administrator			Logout	?
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Scan				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Public User Refere	-			
User Registration	n	Limiting Access to D				
Account Track R	egistration		wea Oroap	Search from List		
▶ SSL/TLS Setting			L	V		
▼ Address Referen	ce Setting		R	egistered Reference Gr	oup Number	
Reference Al Registration	lowed Group			<	Total0	
► Public User R Setting	leference	✓ Access Allowe) ~	Totalo	
▶ Permission of Ac Change	ldress			J 🔹		
▶ Auto Logout				[OK Cancel	
▶ Administrator Pa Setting	assword					
		-				

bizhub C203/C253/C353

2.45.2 Restricting address registration by a user

Restrict address registration or change by a general user.

Permission of Address Change

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Permission of Address Change".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	8
PAGE Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Print				Ŵ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► Authentication		Restrict User Acce	ss			
▶ User Registration	1	Registering and Cha	nging Addresses 🛛 F	Restrict 🛩		
Account Track Re	egistration					
▶ SSL/TLS Setting					OK Cancel	
▶ Address Referen	ce Setting					
Permission of Ad Change	dress					
▶ Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					

Item	Definition
Registering and Chang- ing Addresses	Select "Restrict". If "Restrict" is selected, this menu item is not displayed on the Store Address tab in the user mode.

Q Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", "Restrict" is specified.

2.45.3 Specifying the auto logout time

→ Specify the length of time before Administrator mode or User mode is automatically logged out.
 If no operation is performed for the length of time specified here, the user will automatically be logged out.

Auto Logout

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Auto Logout".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	8
PAGE Web Co	nnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Auto Logout				
▶ User Registration		Admin. Mode Logou	It Time E	60 🚩 Minute		
Account Track Re	gistration	User Mode Logout 1	Time E	60 🚩 Minute		
▶ SSL/TLS Setting						
▶ Address Referenc	e Setting				OK Cancel]
Permission of Ade Change	dress					
Auto Logout						
Administrator Pas Setting	sword					

Item	Definition
Admin. Mode Logout Time	Specify the time period before the user is automatically logged out when no operation is performed for a certain period of time in Administrator mode.
User Mode Logout Time	Specify the time period before the user is automatically logged out when no operation is performed for a certain period of time in the user mode.

2.45.4 Specifying the administrator password

→ Specify the password for the machine's administrator.

Administrator Password Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab.
- 2 Select "Administrator Password Setting".

KONICA MINOLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	8
PAGE Web Connection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance Secu	rity Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	Administrator Pass	word Setting			
User Registration	Administrator Passw	/ord			
▶ Account Track Registration	Retype Administrato	r Password			
▶ SSL/TLS Setting					_
▶ Address Reference Setting				OK Cancel]
Permission of Address Change					
▶ Auto Logout					
 Administrator Password Setting 					

⊀ Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", this menu item does not appear.

If the certificate for this machine is not installed, this menu item does not appear.

Item	Definition
Administrator Password	Specify the administrator password (up to 8 characters).
Retype Administrator Password	Enter the administrator password again for confirmation.

Q

Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations. This section describes other items specifiable on the Box tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

From the Box tab, user boxes can be created and basic user box information can be viewed.

Q Detail

For details on the box function, refer to the User manual – Box Operations.

2.46.1 Changing user box settings or deleting a user box

Q

Detail

In Administrator mode, user box settings can be changed and a user box can be deleted without entering the user box password. In the user mode, files in the box can be operated. For details, refer to the User manual – Box Operations.

Open User Box

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab.
- 2 Select "Open User Box".

	IOLTA	Administrator			Logout	
Scope Web C	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhuł	0 C353	Ready to Print			Co.	i i
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Open User Box		User Box Number 1	User Bo)x box1		
▶ Create User Box			Name blic Ownerl			
▶ Open System Us	er Box	Box Operation	User Box Settin	g Delete User	Box	
▶ Create System U	Jser Box					
					Cancel	

Item	Definition
[User Box Setting]	Changes the user box settings.
[Delete User Box]	Deletes the user box.

User Box Setting

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Index	Specify the indexing characters.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
User Box Expansion Function is changed.	To add the confidential reception function to the user box, specify the password (up to 8 characters). This setting appears when the optional fax kit is installed.
User Box Password is changed.	To change the user box password, select the check box. Specify the current password and the new password (up to 8 characters).
User Box Owner is changed.	To change the user box owner, select this check box to select the box type.

2.46.2 Creating a new user box

Q

2

Detail

Public user boxes can be created only, and they cannot be changed in Administrator mode. For details on creating a user box, refer to the User manual – Box Operations.

Create User Box

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab.
- 2 Select "Create User Box".

	2	Administrator			Logout	?
Stoff Web Conne	ction 🦪	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub C353		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Open User Box	4	Create User Box(Pu	blic)			
Create User Box		Box is the function to sav Documents in the Box ca				
▶ Open System User Box		User Box Number		, <u>-</u>		
▶ Create System User Be	ох	Use opening	number			
-		 Input directly 	((1-9	999999999)	
		User Box Name				
		User Box Passw				
		Retype User Box Index	Password			
			for Box search and disp	lav by Name.		
				ABC 🗸		
		Туре		Public		
		Auto Delete Documer	nt	1 day 🗸		
		User Box Expansion	Function	Hidden		
		🗆 Confidential RX				
		Communication F	Password			
		Retype Commun	ication Password			
	-					
					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Select the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Index	Specify the indexing characters.
Туре	Specify the user box type. Public user boxes can be created only, and they cannot be changed in Administrator mode.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
User Box Expansion Function	To add the confidential reception function to the user box, specify the password (up to 8 characters). This setting appears when the optional fax kit is installed.



Q Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations.

2.46.3 Changing system box settings or deleting system boxes

→ Change the settings for created system boxes (bulletin board User box, relay user box, and annotation user box) or delete the boxes.



If the optional FAX kit is installed, "Bulletin Board User Box" and "Relay User Box" are selectable.

Open System User Box

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab.
- 2 Select "Open System User Box".

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools Help</u>			1
	Administrator		Logout ?
Le scoff Web Connection	Ready to Scan		
Model Name: bizhub C353	Ready to Print		Ŵ
Maintage Committee	Data da		
		and the second se	

Item	Definition
[User Box Setting]	Changes the user box settings.
[Delete User Box]	Deletes the user box.

"Bulletin Board User Box" settings

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
User Box Password is changed.	Change the user box password (up to 8 characters).
User Box Owner is changed.	To change the user box owner, select this check box, and then specify the box type.

"Relay User Box" settings

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Relay Address	Specify the relay address.
Relay TX Password is changed.	To change the relay user box password, select the check box. Specify the current password and the new password (up to 8 characters).

"Annotation User Box" settings

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
Change User Box Pass- word	Change the user box password.
Change Count Up	To change the counting method, select the check box, and then specify the counting method. If the user box contains documents, the setting cannot be specified.
Change Stamp Elements	To change the text, select the check box, and then specify settings for "Primary field", "Secondary Field", "Date/Time", "Print Position", "Density", and "Number Type".

2.46.4 Creating a new system user box

Q

Detail

If the optional FAX kit is installed, "Bulletin Board User Box" and "Relay User Box" are selectable.

Create System User Box

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab.
- 2 Select "Create System User Box".

		Administrator			Logout	?
PAGE Web Co	onnection	🌍 Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Open User Box		Create System Use	er Box (Bulletin Bo	ard)		
▶ Create User Box		User Box Number				
▶ Open System Us	er Box	 Use opening Input directly 		4.00	999999)	
▶ Create System U	ser Box	 Input arectij 	Υ I	(1-998	1999999)	
		User Box Name	[
		🗆 Use Box Passwo	ord.			
		User Box Passw	ord			
		Retype User Box	Password			
		Туре	F	Public		
		Auto Delete Docume	nt	1 day 💙		
					OK Cancel	_
				l	Cancer	

When "Bulletin Board User Box" is selected

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Specify the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Туре	Specify the user box type. Public user boxes can be created only, and they cannot be changed in Administrator mode.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.

When "Relay User Box" is selected

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Specify the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Relay Address	Specify the relay address.
Relay TX Password	Specify the relay TX password (up to 8 characters).
Retype Relay TX Pass- word	Type in the relay TX password again.

When "Annotation User Box" is selected

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Specify the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
Count Up	Select the counting method. If the user box contains documents, the setting cannot be specified.
Stamp Elements	Specify settings for "Primary Field", "Secondary Field", "Date/Time Setting", "Print Position", "Density", and "Number Type"

Q

Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User manual – Copy Operations.

2.47 Print Setting tab settings

This section describes other items specifiable on the Print Setting tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

→ On the Print Setting tab, specify settings for the print function of this machine.

Q Detail

2

For details on the print function, refer to the User manual – Print Operations.

2.47.1 Specifying initial settings for the print function

→ Specify initial settings for the print function.

Basic Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab.
- 2 Select "Basic Setting".

	OLTA	Administrator			Logout	3
Stage Web Co	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhub	C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Addres	s Network	(
Basic Setting		Basic Setting				
▶ PCL Setting		PDL Setting	[Auto 🛩		
▶ PS Setting		Paper Tray		Auto 🖌		
▶ XPS Settings		Output Tray		Tray 1 💌		
▶ Interface Setting		2-Sided Print	L	OFF 🛩		
0		Bind Direction		Left Bind 🛩		
		Staple		OFF 🗸		
		Punch		OFF 🚩		
		Number of Sets	Ē	1 (1-999)		
		Default Paper Size		A4	~	
		Original Direction		Portrait 🖌 🖌		
		Spool Print Jobs in HI	DD before RIP	on 🖌		
		Banner Sheet Setting		OFF 🛩		
		Banner Sheet Paper 1	īray .	Auto 🖌		
		No Matching Paper in	Tray Setting	Stop Printing(Tray F	ixed) 💙	
		A4/A3<->LTR/LGR Au	uto Switch	OFF 🛩		
		Binding Direction Adju	Istment	Finishing Priority	*	
					OK Can	cel

Item	Definition
PDL Setting	Specify the PDL language.
Paper Tray	Specify the paper tray.
Output Tray	Specify the output tray.
2-Sided Print	Specify whether to perform 2-sided print.
Bind Direction	Specify the binding direction.
Staple	Specify whether to perform staple. If yes, specify the number of staples.
Punch	Specify whether to perform punch.
Number of Sets	Specifies the number of copies to be printed.
Default Paper Size	Specifies the paper size.
Original Direction	Select the original direction.

Item	Definition
Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	Select whether to spool a print job to HDD.
Banner Sheet Setting	Specify whether to print the first page on the banner page.
Banner Sheet Paper Tray	Select the default paper tray used for printing the banner pages.
No Matching Paper in Tray Setting	Specify whether to continue printing from a different paper tray when there is no paper of the appropriate size in the specified paper tray.
A4/A3 <=> LTR/LGR Auto Switch	Select whether to print an A4 (Letter)/A3 (Ledger) original in the same size with disregard to image missing when the Letter (A4)/Ledger (A3) paper tray is selected.
Binding Direction Adjust- ment	Specify the binding direction adjustment method.

Q Detail

The staple function is available only if the optional finisher is installed.

The punch function is available only if the optional finisher and punch kit are installed.

2.47.2 Specifying settings for PCL/PS/XPS print

→ Specify settings for PCL/PS/XPS print

PCL Settings

Г

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab.
- 2 Select "PCL Setting".

	OLTA	& Administrator			Logout	?
Model Name: bizhub		Ready to Scan				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Basic Setting		PCL Setting				
▶ PCL Setting		Symbol Set	PC-8	, Code Page 437 🛛 👻		
▶ PS Setting		Typeface				
▶ XPS Settings		Resident Font	Couri	er	*	
► Interface Setting		C Download Font Font Size				
		Scalable Font	12.00	Point (4.00-999.	75)	
		Bitmap Font	10.00			
		Line/Page	64	(5-128)		
		CR/LF Mapping	OFF		*	
				[OK Cancel	_

Item	Definition
Symbol Set	Specify the symbol set.
Typeface	Select the internal font ("Resident Font") or downloaded font ("Download Font").
Font Size	Specify the font size.
Line/Page	Specify the number of lines per page.
CR/LF Mapping	Specify the text data CR/LF replacement method.

bizhub C203/C253/C353

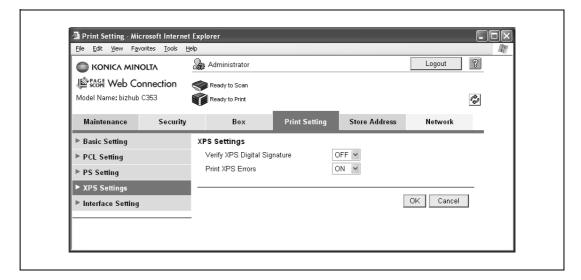
PS Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab.
- 2 Select "PS Setting".

	NOLTA	🎥 Administrator			Logout	?
Scope Web C	onnection	Ready to Scan				
Model Name: bizhuł	o C353	Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Basic Setting		PS Setting				
▶ PCL Setting		PS Error Print	[OFF 🕶		
► PS Setting		ICC Profile Settings				
▶ XPS Settings		Photo				
▶ Interface Setting	J	RGB Color	[Device Color 🛩		
		Outnut Profile		Auto 👻 💷		

Item	Definition
PS Error Print	Specify whether to print error message when an error occurs during PS rasterization.
ICC Profile Settings	Specify the ICC profile.
Photo	Specify the default value of the profile when "Photo" is selected by the printer driver.
Text	Specify the default value of the profile when "Text" is selected by the printer driver.
Figure/Table/Graph	Specify the default value of the profile when "Figure/Table/Graph" is selected by the printer driver.
Simulation Profile	Specify the default value of the ICC profile for simulation.

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab.
- 2 Select "XPS Settings".



Item	Definition
Verify XPS Digital Signa- ture	Specify whether to verify digital signature. When "ON" is selected, the document without a valid digital signature is not printed.
Print XPS Errors	Specify whether to print error message when an error occurs during XPS print.

2.47.3 Specifying the interface timeout

 \rightarrow Specify the time period before the interfaced connection times out.

Interface Setting

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab.
- 2 Select "Interface Setting".

KONICA MIN	onnection	Administrator Ready to Scan Ready to Print			Logout	2
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	_
▶ Basic Setting		Interface Setting				
▶ PCL Setting		Network Timeout	60	sec. (10-1000)		
▶ PS Setting		USB Timeout	60	sec. (10-1000)		
▶ XPS Settings						_
► Interface Setting					OK Cancel]
						-

Item	Definition
Network Timeout	Specify the reception timeout for the network.
USB Timeout	Specify the USB timeout.

2.48 Store Address tab settings

From the Store Address tab, transmission destinations and user box destinations for saving data can be registered and their settings can be changed.

Q

Detail

When users are permitted to register addresses, address registration and modification are available in the User mode as well. For details on settings whether or not to permit address registration by users, refer to "Restricting address registration by a user" on page 2-170.

2.48.1 Registering or editing an address book destination

Register a new address book or change address book settings.

Register destinations in the address book in advance, and then they are selectable when sending.

Address Book

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Address Book".

	IOLTA	🆓 Administrator					Lo	gout	?	
🕸 🎼 Web Co	onnection	S R	eady to Scar	ı						
Model Name: bizhub	C353	R	eady to Print							Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box		Print Setting	Store Ac	ldress	Ne	twork	
Address Book		Addr	ress Boo	k List						
▶ Group		The o	other party v	vho wants	to transmit data can I	be registered.				
▶ Program			New Regis	stration						
► Temporary One-	Touch				Search	from Number	1-	50	♥ Go	
▶ Subject					Search	from Index		*	Go	
▶ Text		No.	Function	Name			S/MIME	Edit	Delete	
▶ Prefix/Suffix		1	E-mail	user01				Edit	Delete	
▶ Header Informat	ion	2	FTP	FTP01				Edit	Delete	
		3	SMB	PC01				Edit	Delete]
		4	WebDAV	WebDA	√01			Edit	Delete]
		5	User Box	box01				Edit	Delete]
		6	Fax	faxO1				Edit	Delete]
										_

Item	Definition
[New Registration]	Registers a new destination in the address book.
Search from Number	Select a range of registration numbers, and then click [Go] to display the list of destina- tions of the selected number.
Search from Index	Select the search text, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations of the selected texts.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Function	Displays functions for which addresses were registered.
Name	Displays registered names.
S/MIME	Shows whether or not a certificate is attached to the E-mail destination.
[Edit]	Edits the registered address. The settings are the same as ones available during registra- tion.
[Delete]	Deletes the address from the address book.

When "E-mail" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.
E-mail Address	Enter the address for the destination (up to 320 characters).
Registration of Certifica- tion Information	Select this check box to register certificate information. Select the "Registration of Certification Information" check box. Click [Browse], and then specify the certificate information. Only files in the DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) format are supported for certificate information. To delete the certificate informa- tion, select "Deletion of Certification Information". If the E-Mail address to be registered does not match the E-Mail address of the certificate, the certificate cannot be registered. Confirm whether both E-Mail addresses match, and then register the certificate.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "FTP" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the FTP server of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name.
File Path	Specify the directory of the destination (up to 96 characters).
User ID	Type in the user ID for logging in to the FTP server of the destination (up to 47 characters).
Password	Type in the password for logging in to the FTP server of the destination (up to 31 characters).
anonymous	Specify whether even an anonymous user can access the destination.
PASV Mode	Register whether to make communication in the PASV mode.
Proxy	Specifies whether or not a proxy server is used.
Port Number	Specify the port number to be used.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "SMB" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").					
Name	ype in the address name (up to 24 characters).					
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.					
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the computer of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name.					
File Path	Specify the directory of the destination (up to 255 characters).					
User ID	Type in the user ID for logging in to the computer of the destination (up to 127 characters).					
Password	Type in the password for logging in to the computer of the destination (up to 14 characters).					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.					

When "WebDAV" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").					
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).					
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.					
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the WebDAV server of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name.					
File Path	Specify the directory of the destination (up to 96 characters).					
User ID	Type in the user ID for logging in to the WebDAV server of the destination (up to 63 characters).					
Password	Type in the password for logging in to the WebDAV server of the destination (up to 63 characters).					
SSL Settings	Specify whether perform encryption using SSL.					
Proxy	Specifies whether or not a proxy server is used.					
Port No.	Specify the port number to be used.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.					

When "User Box" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.
User Box No.	Specify the user box number of the destination.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "Fax" was selected using [New Registration]

Q Detail

Appears if the optional fax kit has been installed.

Item	Definition
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.
Destination	Enter the fax number for the destination (up to 38 characters).
Line Setting	Specify the line to be used. This item is enabled if the optional fax multi line is installed.
Communication Setting	Click [Display], and then select the check box for the displayed item ("V34 off", "ECM Off", "International Communication" or "Check Dest. & Send").
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "IP Address Fax" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the fax of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name.
Port No.	Specify the port number to be used.
Machine Type of Desti- nation	Specify whether the destination is a color or monochrome machine.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "Internet Fax" was selected using [New Registration]



This window appears if the Internet fax function is available.

Item	Definition			
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").			
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).			
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.			
E-mail Address	Enter the address for the destination (up to 320 characters).			
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.			
Paper Size	Specifies the paper size.			
Compression Type	Specify the compression method.			
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.			

2.48.2 Registering or editing a group destination

- → Register a new group destination or change group destination settings.
 - Register multiple addresses as a group destination by grouping.
 - To broadcast the fax, use this function.
 - To register addresses in a group, they must be registered in the address book in advance.

Group

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Group".

	IOLTA	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?		
Scope Web C	onnection	Ready to Scan						
Model Name: bizhub) C353	Ready to Print				C.		
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network			
▶ Address Book		Group List				_		
► Group		It is possible to register i a group.	It is possible to register in the group address by making two or more shortening addresses					
▶ Program		It is necessary to register to the shortening address to register in the group address in advance.						
▶ Temporary One	Touch	New Registration						
▶ Subject		New Registration						
▶ Text			Search	from Number	1-50 💌 Go	_		
▶ Prefix/Suffix		No. Name			Edit Delete	1		
▶ Header Informat	ion	1 group01			Edit Delete	I		

Item	Definition
[New Registration]	Registers a new group destination.
Search from Number	Select a range of registration numbers, and then click [Go] to display the list of destina- tions of the selected number.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Displays registered names.
[Edit]	Edits the registered group destination. The settings are the same as ones available during registration.
[Delete]	Deletes the group destination.

New Registration

Item	Definition
Name	Enter the group name (up to 24 characters).
Scan/Fax Address	Select the scan/fax address to be grouped. Select addresses to be grouped from the list of registered addresses.
User Box	Select the user boxes to be grouped. Select addresses to be grouped from the list of reg- istered addresses.
[Check Destination]	Checks registered destinations.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

→

2.48.3 Registering or editing a program destination

- Register a new group destination or change program destination settings.
 - Program destinations can be registered by combining address information, communication information, and original information.

Program address

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Program".

	OLTA	2 A	dministrator				Log	gout	?	
Model Name: bizhub		<u> </u>	eady to Scan eady to Print						Ŷ	
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Setting	Store Ac	ldress	Ne	twork		
► Address Book ► Group		ltis p	ram List ossible to register nunication setting.	by combining the addres	ss, the readir	g setting,	and the			
▶ Program		P/	AGE1	Page (Disp	lays 12 at a	time)	PAGE1	✓ Go		
Temporary One-T	ouch				[Chan	ge Page I	Name		
Subject			Name			Edit		Delete	1	
▶ Text ▶ Prefix/Suffix		1	program01			Edit		Delete	1	
Frenz/Sumz Header Information	.	2					tration	Delete	1	
- Header mormado	,	3				Regis	tration	Delete		
		4				Regis	tration	Delete		
		5					tration	Delete		
		6				Regis	tration	Delete		
		7				Regis	tration	Delete		
		8				Regis	tration	Delete		
		9				Regis	tration	Delete		
		10				Regis	tration	Delete	1	
		11				Regis	tration	Delete	Ī	
		12				Regis	tration	Delete	[
									_	
									_	

Item	Definition
Page (Display 12 at a time)	Select the page, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations of the selected page.
[Change Page Name]	Renames the page.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Displays registered names.
[Registration]	Registers the program destination.
[Edit]	Edits the registered program destination. The settings are the same as ones available dur- ing registration.
[Delete]	Deletes the program destination.

When "E-mail" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].					
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to pint page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Page Number Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Selects whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.					

When "FTP" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered header/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.					

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.					

When "WebDAV" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.					

When "User Box" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.					

When "Fax" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition				
No.	Displays the registration number.				
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).				
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".				
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.				
File Type	Specify the file format.				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.				
Timer TX	Specify whether to perform timer communication. If yes, enter the transmission time.				
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.				
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to pint page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chap- ter", "Page Number Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.				
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.				
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.				

When "IP Address Fax" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition			
No.	Displays the registration number.			
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).			
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".			
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.			
File Type	Specify the file format.			
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.			
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.			
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.			
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.			
Density	Specify the density.			
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.			
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.			
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed			
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.			
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.			
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.			
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.			
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.			
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".			
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".			
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].			
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.			
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.			
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.			

When "Internet Fax" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition				
No.	Displays the registration number.				
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).				
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".				
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.				
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].				
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Separate Scan	pecify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.				
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.				

When "Group" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition				
No.	Displays the registration number.				
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).				
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".				
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.				
File Type	Specify the file format.				
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).				
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.				
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject click [Subject List].				
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.				
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are display				
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].				
Timer TX	Specify whether to perform timer communication. If yes, enter the transmission time.				
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.				
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.				
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg- istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.				
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.				
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.				

When "No Destination" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition				
No.	Displays the registration number.				
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).				
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.				
File Type	Specify the file format.				
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).				
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.				
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].				
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Color	Specify the color mode for scanning.				
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.				
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].				
Timer TX	Specify whether to perform timer communication. If yes, enter the transmission time.				
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.				
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.				
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color" "Pages", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Color", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Color", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Reg-				
	istered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the control panel in advance.				
Stamp Combine Method					

bizhub C203/C253/C353

2-197

2.48.4 Registering or editing destinations to be temporarily used

→ Register destinations to be temporarily used or change temporarily used destination settings.

Q Detail

If "Manual Destination Input" is specified to "Allow", "Temporary One-Touch" is displayed. Specify settings for "Manual Destination Input" from the control panel.

Temporary One-Touch

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Temporary One-Touch".

Q

Detail

The settings are the same as the program destination settings.

For "Temporary One-Touch", the settings for "Limiting Access to Destinations" are not displayed.

For details on settings for "Temporary One-Touch", refer to "Registering or editing a program destination" on page 2-187.

2.48.5 Registering E-mail subject or text

→ Register a subject and text to be used for sending messages or Internet faxes.

Subject

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Subject".
- 3 Select [Edit].

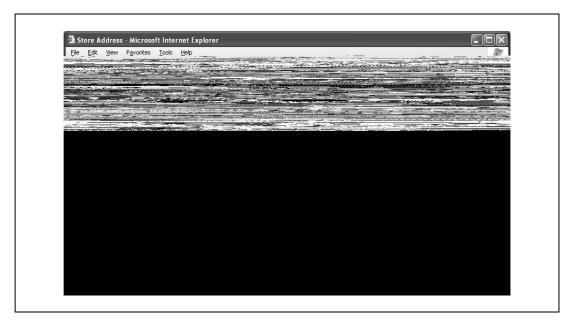
Model Name: bizhub C353 Seady to Scan Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network	Ŷ
	Ŷ
Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network	
Address Book Subject Registration	
▶ Group No. 1	
▶ Program	
▶ Temporary One-Touch	_
► Subject OK Cancel	
P Subject OK Cariber	
Text	
	-

Item	Definition		
No.	Displays the registration number.		
Subject	Register the E-Mail subject (up to 64 characters).		

bizhub C203/C253/C353

Text

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Text".
- 3 Select [Edit].



Item	Definition	
No.	Displays the registration number.	
Text	Register the E-Mail body text (up to 256 characters).	

2.48.6 Using an application registered in an external server

→ When using an application, such as RightFax Server, registered with an external server, register the application information and server address.

By registering the application and server, a connection to the server of the selected application can automatically be established for use.

Up to five applications and servers can be registered. Depending on settings for registered applications, custom items can be specified. PageScope Web Connection provides the following templates. The templates are provided with pre-determined different custom items by application.



If the optional fax kit has not been installed, "Application Registration" is displayed in the menu.

When not using templates, specify custom item settings manually.

Only when the optional fax kit is not installed and Internet fax is disabled, the registered applications can be displayed and operated from the control panel of this machine.

For WalkUp Fax

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	Sender Name (CS)	Name	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Fax Number (CS)	PersonalFaxNum- ber	ASCII	-	-
3	TEL Number (CS)	PersonalVoiceNum- ber	ASCII	-	-
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-

For Fax with Account

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	Sender Name (CS)	Name	ASCII	-	-
2	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
3	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
4	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
5	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
7	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
8	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
9	Holi For Preview	HoldForPreview	-	-	False

For Secure Docs

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
3	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
7	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
8	Document PW	DocumentPass- word	ASCII	-	-
9	Delivery Method	Delivery	-	-	Secure

For Certified Delivery

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
3	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
7	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
8	Document PW	DocumentPass- word	ASCII	-	-
9	Delivery Method	Delivery	-	-	Secure

Application Registration

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Application Registration".
- 3 Select [Registration/Edit].
- 4 Select the template type.

KONICA MIN Scoff Web Co Model Name: bizhub	onnection	Administrator			Logout	?
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Address Book ▶ Group		Application Registrati Application Setting	on			
▶ Program	T	No. Application Name	1			
▶ Temporary One- ▶ Subject	Touch	Server Setting				
▶ Text		Host Address	0.1	D.O.O		
□ Application Regi	stration	File Path				
▶ Prefix/Suffix		User ID				
► Header Informat	ion	Password anonymous PASV Mode Proxy Port No.	0	FF v FF v FF v (1-65535)		
				Back	lext Cancel	

Item	Definition			
No.	Displays the registration number of the selected application.			
Application Name	Enter the application name (up to 16 characters).			
Host Address	Enter the host address for the server registering the application (up to 15 characters).			
File Path	Enter the application file path (up to 96 characters).			
User ID	Enter the user ID for logging in to the server (up to 47 characters).			
Password	Enter the password for logging in to the server (up to 31 characters).			
anonymous	Specify whether even an anonymous user can access the destination.			
PASV Mode	Register whether to make communication in the PASV mode.			
Proxy	Specifies whether or not a proxy server is used.			
Port No.	Specify the port number to be used.			
[Next]	Displays the custom item list. To display the Function Setting screen, click [Edit] for an item to be added or changed.			

Function Settings

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the number of the selected item.
Button Name	Enter the button name (up to 16 characters).
Function Name	Specify the function name.
Message on Panel	Enter the name to be displayed on the panel (32 characters or less).
Display Method	Specify whether to display the name.
Default Value	Enter the default value. To hide the default value, select the "Input string shown as ****" check box. The characters that can be entered differ depending on the selected function.
Keyboard Type	Specify the keyboard type.
Options (When "Authentication" is selected)	Select either "None" or "Password".
Options (When "Delivery" is se- lected)	Select "Normal", "Secure", "Certified" or "Secure Certified".
Options (When "Hold For Pre- view" is selected)	Select "Yes" or "No".
Input Time (When "DelaySendData- Time" is selected)	Select "Year/Month/Day/Hour/Minute".
Default (When "DelaySendData- Time" is selected)	Select either "Device Time" or "Not Specify".

→ To simplify E-mail address entry, register Prefix/Suffix.

Prefix/Suffix

- 1 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab.
- 2 Select "Prefix/Suffix".
- 3 Select [Edit].

KONICA MIN Escoff Web Co Model Name: bizhub	onnection	Administrator			Logout	?
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
 Address Book Group Program Temporary One- Subject Text Prefix/Suffix Header Informat 		Prefix/Suffix No. Prefix Suffix			OK Cancel]

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Prefix	Register the prefix (up to 20 characters).
Suffix	Register the suffix (up to 64 characters).



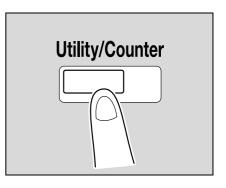
3 Network Settings

3.1 Displaying the Network Settings screen

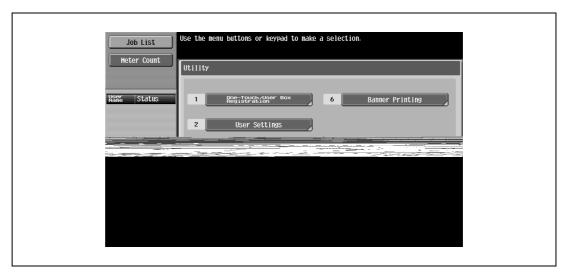
Settings by purpose can be specified via network settings in the control panel of the machine.

Access network settings from the Administrator Settings screen. Perform the following steps to display the Network Settings screen.

1 Press the [Utility/Counter] key.



- 2 Touch [3 Administrator Settings].
 - When setting the Utility screen, you can also select a setting by using the keypad to enter the number next to the desired button. To select [3 Administrator Settings], press the [3] key in the keypad.



3 Type in the password, and then touch [OK].

Г

3

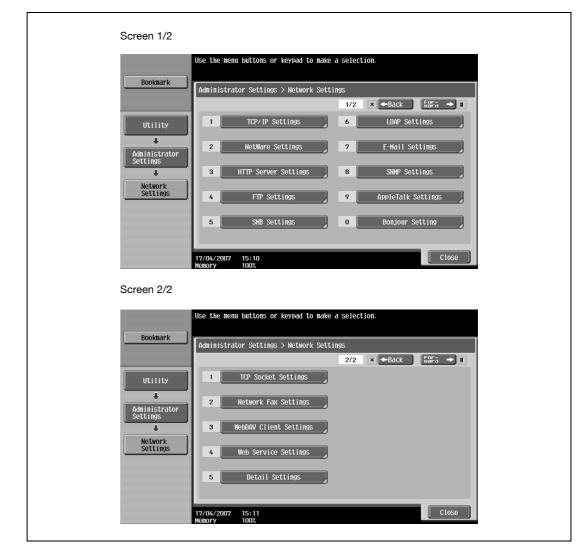
Bookmark	Use the keyboard or keypad to type in the Administrator password. Press ICl to erase the entered the Administrator password. Utility > Administrator Settings
Utility Administrator Settings	+ → Pere 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - ^ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - ^ q w e r t y u i 0 p 0 f a 5 d f g h j k l : 1 z x c v b n n , . / \ Shift
	17/04/2007 15:08 Kenory 100%

The Administrator Settings screen appears.

Bookmark Administrator Settings Utility 1 System Settings 6 Copier Settings Image: Administrator Settings 2 Administrator Settings 7 Printer Settings Image: Settings 3 Reg: Topped year 8 Fax Settings Image: Settings 4 Vesture Proved year 9 System Connection Image: Settings 0 Security Settings 0 Security Settings		Use the menu buttons or keypad to make a selection.
011117 2 Administrator Settings 7 Printer Settings 3 Reg-fourch/user Box Bigstration 8 Fax Settings 4 Vser_Authentication/ Account thentication 9 System Connection	Bookmark	Administrator Settings
Administrator Settings 3 Registeration 8 Fax Settings 4 Veer Authentication 9 System Connection	Utility	1 System Settings 6 Copier Settings
3 Registration 8 Fax Settings 4 Vser_Attraction/ 9 System Connection		2 Administrator/ Machine Settings 7 Printer Settings
	Jettings	3 Registration Box B Fax Settings
5 Network Settings 0 Security Settings		4 User Authentication/ 9 System Connection
		5 Network Settings 0 Security Settings

4 Touch [5 Network Settings] in the Administrator Settings screen.

The Network Settings screen appears.



۵...

Reminder

In order to apply all changes to the network settings, turn off this machine, then on again.

When turning off the main power switch and turning it on again, wait for 10 seconds or longer after power-off, and then turn on the power again. Otherwise, the machine may not operate correctly.

3.2 Network Settings menu list

When specifying settings by purpose from the control panel of the machine, refer to this menu list. This section describes the buttons available when the [5 Network Settings] is touched.

Q

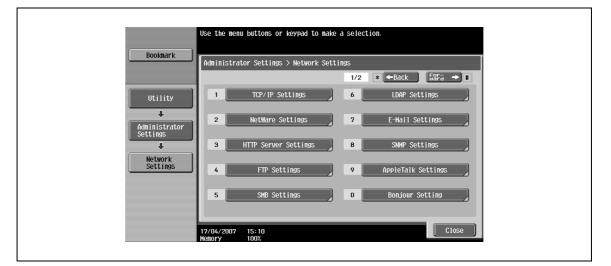
3

Detail

For details on displaying the Network Settings screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 3-3.

Network Settings screen (1/2)

The following setting items are available from the Network Settings screen (1/2).



[1] TCP/IP Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
IP settings	Manual Input	IP Address		
		Subnet Mask		
		Default Gateway		
	Auto Input	DHCP Settings	ON/OFF	-
		BOOTP Settings	ON/OFF	-
		ARP/PING Settings	ON/OFF	-
		AUTO IP Settings	ON/OFF	-
DNS Host	DNS Host Name			-
	Dynamic DNS Set- ting	Enable/Disable		
DNS Domain	DNS Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Enable/Disable		
	Default DNS Domain Name			
	DNS Search Domain Name 1 to 3			
DNS Server Settings	DNS Server Auto Obtain	Enable/Disable		
	Priority DNS Server	IPv4 Address Input	-	
		IPv6 Address Input	-	
	Secondary DNS	IPv4 Address Input		
	Server 1-2	IPv6 Address Input		
RAW Port Number	Port 1 - 6	Job Setting		
		OFF	1	

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
P Filtering (Permit	Enable	Set 1 to 5		
Access)	Disable			
P Filtering (Deny	Enable	Set 1 to 5		
Access)	Disable			
IPv6 Settings	Auto IPv6 Settings	ON		
		OFF	Global Address	Prefix Length
			Gateway Address	
			Link-Local Address	-
IPsec Settings	IKE Settings	Group 1 - 4		-
		Encryption Algo-	DES_CBC	-
		rithm	3DES_CBC	-
			OFF	-
		Authentication Algo-	MD5]
		rithm	SHA-1	
			OFF	
		Key Validity Period		1
		Diffie-Hellman	Group 1	1
		Group	Group 2	
	IPsec SA Settings	Group 1 - 8	Security Protocol	АН
				ESP
				ESP_AH
				OFF
			ESP Encryption Al- gorithm	DES_CBC
				3DES_CBC
				AES_CBC
				AES_CTR
				NULL
				OFF
			ESP Authentication	MD5
			Algorithm	SHA-1
				OFF
			AH Authentication	MD5
			Algorithm	SHA-1
				OFF
		Lifetime After Estab- lishing SA		
	Peer	Group 1 - 10	Encapsulation Mode	Tunnel Mode
				Transport Mode
				OFF
			IP Address	
			Pre-Shared Key Text	-
			Perfect Forward Se- crecy	ON/OFF

[2] NetWare Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
IPX Settings	ON	Ethernet Frame	Auto Detect	
		Туре	802.2	
			802.3	
			Ethernet II	
			802.3SNAP	
	OFF			
NetWare Print Set- tings	ON	PServer	Print Server Name	
			Print Server Pass- word	
			Polling Interval	
			NDS/Bindery Setting	NDS
				NDS & Bindery
			File Server Name	
			NDS Context Name	
			NDS Tree Name	
		Nprinter/Rprinter	Print Server Name	
			Printer Number	
	OFF			
	Status	1		
User Authentication Setting (NDS)	ON/OFF			

[3] HTTP Server Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
PSWC Settings	ON/OFF			
IPP Settings	ON/OFF			
Accept IPP jobs	ON/OFF			
Support Information	Print Job			
	Valid Job			
	Cancel Job			
	Open Job Attributes			
	Open Job			
	Open Printer At- tributes			
Printer Information	Printer Name			
	Printer Location			
	Printer Information			
	Printer URI			
IPP Authentication Settings	ON/OFF			
Authentication Method	requesting-user- name			
	basic			
	digest			
User Name				

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Password				
realm				

[4] FTP Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
FTP TX Settings	ON	Proxy Server Ad-	Input Host Name	
			IPv4 Address Input	
			IPv6 Address Input	
		Proxy Server Port Number		
		Port No.		
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			
FTP Server Settings	ON/OFF			

[5] SMB Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Client Settings	ON	NTLM Setting	v1	
			v2	
			v1/v2	
		User Authentication (NTLM)	ON/OFF	_
	OFF			
Printer Settings	ON	NetBIOS Name		
		Print Service Name		
		Workgroup		
	OFF			
WINS Settings	ON	Automatic Retrieval Settings	Enable/Disable	_
		WINS Server Ad- dress		_
		Node Type Setting	B Node	
			P Node	
			M Node	
			H Node	
	OFF			
Direct Hosting Set- ting	ON/OFF			

bizhub C203/C253/C353

[6] LDAP Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Enabling LDAP	ON/OFF			
Setting Up LDAP	LDAP Server Name			
	Max. Search Results			
	Timeout			
	Initial Setting for	Name		
	Search Details	E-Mail		
		Fax Number		
		Last Name		
		First Name		
		City		
		Company Name		
		Department		
	Server Address			
	Search Base			
	SSL Setting	ON/OFF		
	Port Number			
	Port Number (SSL)			
	Authentication Type	Anonymous		
		Simple		
		Digest-MD5		
		GSS-SPNEGO		
		NTLM v1		
		NTLM v2		
	Select Server Au-	Use Settings		
	thentication Method	Use User Authenti- cation		
		Dynamic Authenti- cation		
	Referral Setting	ON/OFF		
	Login Name			
	Password			
	Domain Name			
	Reset All Settings			
Default LDAP Server Setting				

[7] E-Mail Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
E-Mail TX (SMTP)	Scan to E-Mail	ON/OFF		
	Status Notification	ON/OFF	-	
	Total Counter Notifi- cation	ON/OFF		
	SMTP Server Ad-	Input Host Name		
	dress	IPv4 Address Input	-	
		IPv6 Address Input	-	
	Binary Division	ON/OFF		
	Divided Mail Size		-	
	Connection Timeout		-	
	Server Capacity		-	
	SSL Setting	SMTP over SSL	-	
		Start TLS	1	
		OFF	1	
	Port No.		1	
	Port Number (SSL)			
	Detail Settings	SMTP Authentica- tion	ON	User ID
				Password
				Domain Name
				Authentication Set ting
			OFF	
		POP Before SMTP Authentication	ON/OFF	_
		POP Before SMTP Time		
E-Mail RX (POP)	ON	POP Server Address	Input Host Name	
			IPv4 Address Input	
			IPv6 Address Input	
		Connection Timeout		
		SSL Setting	ON/OFF	
		Port No.		
		Port Number (SSL)		
		Login Name		
		Password		
		APOP Authentica- tion	ON/OFF	
		Check for New Mes- sages	Yes/No	
		Polling Interval		
	OFF			

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
S/MIME Communi- cation Setting	ON	Digital Signature	Do not add signa- ture	
			Always add signa- ture	
			Select when send- ing	
		E-Mail Text Encryp-	RC2-40	
		tion Method	RC2-64	
			RC2-128	
			DES	
			3DES	
			AES-128	
			AES-192	
			AES-256	
		Print S/MIME infor- mation	Yes/No	
		Automatically Ob- tain Certificates	Yes/No	
	OFF			

[8] SNMP Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
SNMP v1/v2c(IP)	ON/OFF			
SNMP v3(IP)	ON/OFF			
SNMP v1(IPX)	ON/OFF			
UDP Port Number				
SNMP v1/v2c Set- tings	Read Community Name Settings			
	Write Setting	Enable/Disable		
	Write Community Name Settings			
SNMP v3 Settings	Context Name Set- tings			
	Discovery User Per- missions	ON/OFF		
	Discovery User Name Settings			
	Read User Name Settings			
	Security Level	OFF		
		auth-password		
		auth-password/ priv-password		
	Password Setting	Read auth		
	(Read)	Read priv		
		Write auth		
		Write priv		
	Write User Name Settings			

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
SNMP v3 Settings	Security Level	OFF		
		auth-password		
		auth-password/ priv-password		
	Password Setting	Read auth		
	(Write)	Read priv		
		Write auth		
		Write priv		
	Encryption Algo-	DES		
	rithm	AES-128		
	Authentication Algo-	MD5		
rithm	SHA-1			
TRAP Setting	Allow/Restrict			
TRAP Setting When Authentication Failed	Enable/Invalid			

[9] AppleTalk Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
AppleTalk Settings	ON	Printer Name		
		Zone Name		
		Current Zone		
	OFF			

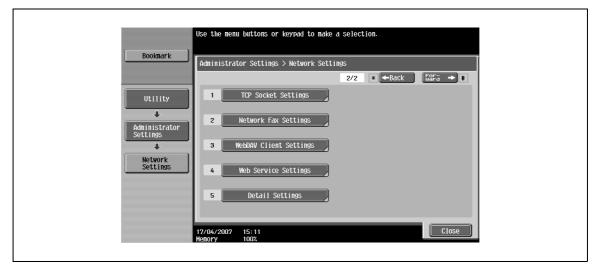
[0] Bonjour Setting

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Bonjour Setting	ON	Bonjour Name		
	OFF			

Network Settings screen (2/2)

3

The following setting items are available from the Network Settings screen (2/2).



[1] TCP Socket Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
TCP Socket	ON	Use SSL/TLS	ON/OFF	
		Port Number		
		Port Number (SSL)		
	OFF			
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	ON	Port Number (ASCII Mode)	*	
	OFF			

[2] Network Fax Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Network Fax Func- tion Settings	IP Address Fax Function	ON/OFF		
	Internet Fax Func- tion	ON/OFF		
SMTP TX Settings	Port No.			
	Connection Timeout			
SMTP RX Settings	ON	Port No.	*	
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
WebDAV Client Set-	ON	Proxy Server Ad- dress	Input Host Name	
ting			IPv4 Address Input	
			IPv6 Address Input	
		Proxy Server Port Number		
		User Name		
		Password		
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			

[4] Web Service Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Web Service Com-	Friendly Name			
mon Settings	SSL Setting	ON/OFF		
Printer Settings	ON	Printer Name		
		Printer Location		
		Printer Information		
	OFF			
Scanner Settings	ON	Scanner Name		
		Scanner Location		
		Scanner Information		
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			

Detail Settings

First-level menu	Second-level menu	Third-level menu	Fourth-level menu	Fifth-level menu
Device Setting	MAC Address			
	Network Speed	Auto Setting		
		10Mbps Half Duplex		
		10Mbps Full Duplex	_	
		100Mbps Half Du- plex	-	
		100Mbps Full Du- plex	-	
		1Gbps Full Duplex		
Time Adjustment	ON	NTP Server Address	Input Host Name	
Setting			IPv4 Address Input	
			IPv6 Address Input	
		Port Number		-
	OFF			
Status Notification	Register Notification	IP Address 1 - 5	Address	Input Host Name
Setting	Address			IPv4 Address Input
				IPv6 Address Input
			Port Number	
			Community Name	
			Notification Items	
		IPX Address	Network Address	
			Node Address	
			Community Name	
			Notification Items	
		E-Mail 1 - 10	Edit E-Mail Address	
			Notification Items	
Total Counter Notifi-	Notification Sched-	Schedule 1 - 2	Monthly	Monthly Frequency
cation Settings	ule Setting			Date Setting
			Weekly	Weekly Frequency
				Day of the Week
			Daily	Interval of Day(s)
	Notification Address Setting	Address 1 - 3	Edit E-Mail Address	
			Schedule Settings	Schedule 1 - 2
	Model Name			
	Send Now			
PING	PING TX Address	Input Host Name		
Confirmation		IPv4 Address Input		
		IPv6 Address Input		
	Check Connection			
SLP Setting	Enable/Disable			
LPD Setting	Enable/Disable			
Prefix/Suffix Setting	ON/OFF Setting	ON/OFF		
	Prefix/Suffix Setting	Prefix		
		Suffix		
Action for Invalid	Delete the Job			
Certificate	Continue			



4 Appendix

4.1 Product Specifications (Network functions)

Item	Specifications
Туре	Embedded
Frame type	IEEE802.2/802.3 / Ethernet II / IEEE802.3SNAP
Cable type	10Base-T / 100Base-TX / 1000Base-T
Connector	RJ-45
Mainly supported protocols	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), BOOTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, AutoIP, SLP, SNMP, FTP, LPR/LPD, RAW Socket, SMB over TCP/IP, IPP, HTTP, POP, SMTP, LDAP, NTP, SSL, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, Bonjour, NetBEUI, WebDAV, WSD, S/MIME, Ipsec, DNS, DynamicDNS
Supported LDAP servers	OpenLDAP 2.1x, Active Directory, Exchange 5.5/2000/2003, Sun Java Directory Server (Netscape/iPlanet Directory Server), Novell NetWare 5.x/6.x NDS, Novell eD- irectory 8.6/8.7, LotusDominoServer (5.x/6.x)*
Supported LDAP protocol	LDAP Protocol Version 3 (Version 2 not supported)
Supported SSL versions	SSL2, SSL3, and TLS1.0 (An x.509 certificate must be installed on the server.)
Multiprotocol	Auto detection
Operating environment for PageScope Web Connection	Supported Web browsers: Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6 or later recommended (JavaScript and Cookies en- abled) Netscape Navigator Ver. 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Mozilla Firefox Ver. 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Adobe [®] Flash [®] Player (plug-in version 7.0 or later required if "Flash" is selected as the display format)
Setup	Saved to non-volatile memory

* If you specify the search condition to "OR" or "END" when using the LotusDominoServer, it does not work properly.

4.2 Glossary

Term	Description
10Base-T/ 10B100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T	A set specifications under the Ethernet standards. Uses cables consisting of pairs of twisted copper wires. The transmission speed of 10Base-T is 10 Mbps, of 100Base-TX is 100 Mbps, and of 1000Base-T is 1,000 Mbps.
2in1	This is a function to send the page set as double page by consolidating the two-page document on one sheet of paper.
Abbreviation/ address	This is a function to register the frequently used fax number of the recipient. When registering abbreviation/address, you can register the address name and search characters. It makes possible to specify the address using the searched character of the abbreviated selection.
Active directory	A service that consolidates management of all information such as hardware re- sources for servers, clients, and printers on a network supported by Microsoft and the attributes and access permissions of the users.
Adobe [®] Flash [®]	Software developed by Adobe Systems Inc. (formerly developed by Macromedia, Inc.), and used to create data combining vector-graphic animation and sound, and the format of this data file. The bidirectional content can be manipulated using a key- board and a mouse. The files can be kept relatively compact, and they can be ac- cessed with the Web browser plug-in.
anonymous FTP	While normal FTP sites are protected by an account name and password, this type of FTP site can be used by anyone without a password by simply entering "anonymous" as the account name.
APOP	Abbreviation for Authenticated Post Office Protocol. An authentication method with encrypted passwords, which results in increased safety, as compared to the usual unencrypted passwords used by POP to retrieve e-mail messages.
AppleTalk	A generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking.
Auto IP	A function for automatically acquiring the IP address. If acquisition of the IP address failed with DHCP, an IP address is acquired from the address space of 169.254.0.0.
Background Removal	This function sends a document after adjusting bright-ness of the background color of the document.
Batch transmission	This is a function automatically sends one document at a specified time, only when the transmission conditions such as destination, sending time, memory transmission or resolution are stored in the same document memory.
Binding Position	This is a function for specifying the binding position of a double-sided document sent using the ADF. There is top/bottom binding, where the binding position is at the top (or) bottom of the document, and there is left/right binding, where the binding position is at the left (or right) of the document and the top and bottom of the second side of the document differ.
bit	Abbreviation for Binary Digit. The smallest unit of information (data quantity) on a computer or printer. Displays data using 0 or 1.
Bitmap Font	A font that is displayed using a collection of dots. These look increasingly jagged with larger font sizes.
Blocked number	This is a function to avoid receiving of the troublesome fax by registering the number you want to block in advance. If a registered telephone number matches the receiving telephone number, the incoming call is rejected and a [Blocked] message is displayed.
BMP	Abbreviation for Bitmap. A file format for saving image data which uses the .bmp ex- tension. Commonly used on Windows platforms. You can specify the color depth from mon- ochrome (2 values) to full color (16,777,216 colors). Images are not usually com- pressed when saved.
Bonjour	Macintosh network technology for automatically detecting devices connected to the network and for specifying settings. Previously called "Rendezvous", the name was changed to "Bonjour" starting with Mac OS X v10.4.
Book Copy	A function for sending a fax of a book or catalog with the front cover, back cover and the left and right pages sent as separate pages.
BOOTP	Abbreviation for Bootstrap Protocol. A protocol in which a client computer on a TCP/IP network automatically specifies the network settings from the server. Currently, DHCP, which is an advanced protocol based on BOOTP, is mainly used.
bps	This is an abbreviation of bit per second. It means the amount of data sent in one second as the unit of data transmission.

Term	Description	
Brightness	Brightness of a display screen.	
Broadcast	A transmission of a single document to many recipients in one operation.	
Bulletin board	This function posts the documents to be viewed, or stores the documents to be transmitted through polling.	
Byte	Unit of information (data quantity) on a computer or printer. Configured as 1 byte equals 8 bits.	
Check Dest. & Send	A function for sending a fax transmission only after the specified fax number and the fax number information (CSI) for the recipient's machine match. This prevents misdi- rected transmissions since a transmission error occurs if the numbers do not match.	
Client	A computer that uses the services provided by a server through a network.	
Closed Network RX	A function for accepting only transmissions from recipient machines with a matching password.	
СМҮК	Abbreviation for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black. The toner and ink colors used for color printing and all colors can be represented by changing the mixing ratio of CMYK.	
Color matching	Technology for minimizing color discrepancy among different devices such as scanners, displays, and printers.	
Compact PDF	A compression method for reducing the data amount using the PDF format when converting color documents to data. The highest compression efficiency is achieved by identifying the text and image re- gions and using the resolution and compression method most appropriate for each region. The compact PDF format can be selected when converting documents to data using	
	the scanning functions of this machine.	
Confidential communication	A function for sending and receiving documents to be viewed only by specific per- sons. The confidential document is saved in a confidential box in the recipient's ma- chine and is not printed when it is received. The received document can be printed when a specific operation is performed, for example, when the access code for the confidential box is entered.	
Contrast	The difference in intensity between the light and dark parts of the image (light/dark variation). An image with small light/dark variation has low contrast, and an image with large light/dark variation has high contrast.	
CSV	Abbreviation for Comma Separated Values. One of the formats for saving database or spreadsheet data as a text file. (The file extension is ".csv".) The data, which is separated by commas (as the delimiter), can be shared by different applications.	
Default	The initial settings. The settings first selected when the machine is turned on, or the settings first specified when the function is selected.	
Default gateway	A device, such as a computer or router, used as a gateway to access computers not on the same LAN.	
Default value	The setting value specified in advance when the machine is shipped from the factory. Some default settings can be changed from the settings menu. It is convenient to set frequently used values as default settings based on the usage conditions.	
Density	An indication of the amount of darkness in the image.	
Density Compensation	Color correction function used in output devices such as printers and displays.	
DHCP	Abbreviation for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol in which a client computer on a TCP/IP network automatically specifies the network settings from the server. With collective management of the IP address for DHCP clients on the DHCP server, you can avoid duplication of an address and build a network easily.	
Dialing method	There are three types: PB (push-button (tone) dialing), 10PPS (pulse dialing at 10 pps), and 20PPS (pulse dialing at 20 pps).	
Direct Inward Dialing (DID)	A function that provides numbers for fax and phone functions separately. In order to use the DID function, one must subscribe for NTT's DID (modem DID) services.	
Dither	One method of combining two colors to create an approximate representation of shades of gray. Processing is easier than with error diffusion, but this can lead to irregularities.	
DNS	Abbreviation for Domain Name System. A system that acquires the supported IP addresses from host names in a network environment. DNS allows the user to access other computers over a network by specifying host names, instead of having to use IP addresses that are difficult to re- member and complicated.	

Term	Description
DPI (dpi)	Abbreviation for Dots Per Inch. A resolution unit used by printers and scanners. Indicates how many dots per inch are represented in an image. The higher the value, the higher the resolution.
Driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a peripheral device.
DSN	Abbreviation for Delivery Status Notifications. A delivery status notification message that is sent back to the sender at the time the E-mail is received at the recipients mail server.
Dynamic authentication (LDAP setting)	An authentication method option for connecting to the LDAP server from the multi- functional product. Select this option if the name and password for logging on to the LDAP server must be entered each time by the user when referencing the destination information from the LDAP server.
ECM	Abbreviation for Error Correction Mode. Error resend mode of G3 communication. It confirms whether the data is correctly sent to the recipient or not, and if it is not correctly sent, it communicates by resend- ing the same data. If the recipient is set for the ECM mode and the communication is done in ECM unless ECM off is specified in this machine.
Ethernet	LAN transmission line standard.
Fax ID	The identifying code for the mutual recognition when transmitting faxes. Normally the fax number is registered as the fax ID.
File extension	The characters added to the file name in order to identify file formats. The file exten- sion is added after a period, for example, ".bmp" or ".jpg".
Forced memory reception	This is the function to store the received document in memory and to print if required.
Frame Erase	This is a function to erase the black shadow around the document and then transmit the fax, for example, when scanning the document formed of booklet or when scanning a document by keeping ADF open.
Frame type	Type of communication format used in a NetWare environment. Communication is not possible if the same frame type is not used.
FTP	Abbreviation for File Transfer Protocol. A protocol for transferring files over the Inter- net or an intranet on the TCP/IP network.
F code	This is a communication procedure for the usage of sub address of T.30* standard- ized by ITU-T (international telecommunication union) provided by Japanese Com- munications Industrial Corporation. In the communication between fax machines with the F code function, various functions that use F code can be utilized even if the manufacturers of the fax machines are different. In this machine, F code is used in the bulletin boards, relay request, relay transmissions, confidential communication, and password transmission. (*Communication standard)
G3	This is a fax communication mode standardized by the ITU-T (International Telecom- munication Union). The communication modes are G3 and G4. G3 is currently the most popularly used mode.
Gateway	Hardware and software used as the point where a network is connected to a network. A gateway also changes data formats, addresses, and protocols according to the connected network.
Gradation	The light and dark levels of an image. As the number increases, smoother brightness variations can be reproduced.
Gray Scale	Monochrome image expressed with black and white gradation information.
Group	Grouping of the abbreviation No. of multiple groups. This function is useful when there is a large number sequential broadcast and sequential polling received in the same address.
GSS-SPNEGO/ Simple/Digest MD5	Authentication methods for logging on to the LDAP server. The authentication meth- od (GSS-SPENGO, SIMPLE or Digest MD5) for the LDAP server differs depending on the server being used and the server settings.
Halftone	The method of producing the light and dark parts of an image through varying sizes of black and white dots.
Hard disk	Large capacity storage device for storing data. The data can be stored even if the power is turned off.
Host name	Displayed name of a device over a network.
НТТР	Abbreviation for HyperText Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to send and receive data between a Web server and a client (Web browser). Documents containing images, recordings, or video clips can be exchanged with the expressive form information.

Term	Description
ICM	Abbreviation for Image Color Management. The color management system used by Windows. Color differences of input/output devices, such as monitors, scanners and printers, are adjusted to reproduce colors so that they are nearly the same on any device.
Install	To install hardware, operating systems, applications, printer drivers on to a computer.
Internet Fax	Transmission method by which scanned documents are sent and received between an Internet fax and computers as TIFF format E-Mail attachments over intranets (in- ternal company networks) and the Internet.
IPP	Abbreviation for Internet Printing Protocol. A protocol that sends and receives print data and controls printers over a TCP/ IP network such as the Internet. Data can also be sent to printers in remote areas to be printed over the Internet.
IPsec	The security technology that is used with TCP/IP. A service with enhanced security can be provided by specifying the encryption of transmission packets and the authentication protocol.
IPv6	Abbreviation for Internet Protocol version 6. A protocol that has been prepared to replace the currently used IPv4 protocol in re- sponse to increase in the number of devices that use the Internet. Additional improvements include 128-bit IP addresses and added security features.
IPX	One of protocols used with NetWare. Operates at the network layer of the OSI reference model.
IPX/SPX	Abbreviation for Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. A protocol developed by Novel, Inc. that is commonly used under a NetWare environment.
IP Address	A code (address) that is used to identify individual network devices over the Internet. IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4), widely spread today, is expressed such as 192.168.1.10 using 32-bit numbers divided into four. In the next generation IPv6 (In- ternet Protocol version 6), 128-bit IP addresses are used. IP addresses are assigned to devices, including computers, which are connected to the Internet.
IP Address Fax	An IP address identifies various networked devices on the Internet. IP Address Fax uses these addresses to transmit and receive faxes within an intranet.
JPEG	Abbreviation for Joint Photographic Experts Group. One of the file formats for saving image data. (The file extension is ".jpg"). The compression ratio is approximately 1/10 to 1/100. This format uses an effective method in the compression of continuous-tone images, such as photographs.
Kerberos	A type of network authentication system used by Windows 2000 or later. Used in Ac- tive Directory authentication. Users can be safely and efficiently authenticated with a two-phase authentication (user logon and network resource usage) on a dependable site set up on the network.
LAN	Abbreviation for Local Area Network. A network which connects computers on the same floor, in the same building, or in neighboring buildings.
Local line	Public telephone line supported by Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
Local printer	A printer connected to a parallel or USB port of a computer.
Long Document	A setting for sending document pages longer than A3 size (420 mm/16-1/2 inch). Long documents can be transmitted by specifying the setting for long originals.
LPD	Abbreviation for Line Printer Daemon. A printer protocol that uses TCP/IP and is plat- form-independent. LPD was originally developed for BSD UNIX, and it has become the standard printing protocol that can be used with any computers.
LPR/LPD	Abbreviation for Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon. A printing method over a network in a Windows NT system or UNIX system. Using TCP/IP, you can output print data from Windows or Unix to a printer over a network.
LDAP	Abbreviation for Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. On a TCP/ IP network, such as the Internet or an intranet, this protocol is used to access a database for managing environment information and the E-Mail addresses of network users.
MAC address	Abbreviation for Media Access Control address. With a special ID number for each Ethernet card, data can be sent and received between the cards. This number consists of 48 bits. The first 24 bits consist of a number that represents a manufacture, which is controlled and assigned by IEEE. The last 24 bits consist of a number that the manufacturer assigns uniquely to the card.
Main scanning	The operation of optically scanning the document and converting it to image data.
Main scanning direction	This is the horizontal direction of scanned documents.
Manual transmission	An operation to send a fax while checking the status of the receiving machine.

Term	Description
Memory	Storage device for storing data temporally. When the power is turned off the data may or may not be erased.
Memory overflow	A condition where the fax memory becomes full while scanned documents or tem- porarily stored documents are saved.
Memory transmission	This is a procedure for starting a fax transmission after a document is scanned and stored in the memory. If memory transmission is used, the total number of pages are automatically printed in the page number of the transmission source information and an image of the first page of the sent document is printed in the transmission report. However, the memory may become full if there are many pages of the document or if the data is large due to finely detailed images.
MDN	Abbreviation for Message Disposition Notifications. A delivery confirmation message that is sent back to the sender in response to such as request.
MH	Abbreviation for Modified Huffman. A data compression encoding method for fax transmissions. Documents containing mostly text are compressed to about 1/10 their original size.
MIB	Abbreviation for Management Information Base. In a TCP/IP transmission, MIB uses SNMP to define the management information format for a group of network devices. There are two formats: the manufacturer-specific private MIB and the standardized MIB.
Mixed Original	This is a function to detect and send various sizes of documents.
MMR	Abbreviation for Modified Modified Read. A data compression encoding method for fax transmissions. Documents containing mostly text are compressed to about 1/20 their original size.
Multi Page TIFF	A TIFF file that has multiple pages.
NDPS	Abbreviation for Novell Distributed Print Services. Provides a highly efficient printing solution in an NDS environment. By using the NDPS as a printer server, you can out put from the desired printer, automatically download the printer driver of a newly installed printer, simplify and automate complicated management environments related to printer use, and integrate management related to the network printer.
NDS	Abbreviation for Novell Directory Services. The servers and printers on a network and the shared resources of the user informa- tion, as well as the user access authority over these items can be consolidated in the hierarchic structure.
NetBIOS	Abbreviation for Network Basic Input Output System. A communication interface developed by IBM.
NetBEUI	Abbreviation for NetBIOS Extended User Interface. A network protocol developed by IBM. By simply specifying the computer name, you can build a small-scale network
NetWare	Network operating system developed by Novell. NetWare IPX/SPX is used as the communication protocol.
No. of documents	Used for quick memory transmission to send a fax transmission with the total page numbers. This function allows the recipient to check whether all pages were received or not (In case of memory transmission, the total no. of pages are automatically added).
Nprinter/Rprinter	Remote printer support module for using a printer server under a NetWare environ- ment. Use NetWare 3.x with Rprinter, and NetWare 4.x with Nprinter.
NTLM	Abbreviation for NT LAN Manager. User authentication method used by Windows NT or later. With the MD4 and MD5 encoding methods, passwords are encoded.
NTP	Abbreviation for Network Time Protocol. The protocol for correctly adjusting the in- ternal clock of the computer over the network. In a hierarchical method, the time is adjusted with the server at the highest level using GPS to acquire the correct time, which is then referenced by each lower level host.
OCR	Abbreviation for Optical Character Reader. A device or software that converts hand- written or printed documents to text data by optically scanning it and, through com- parison with a previously stored pattern, identifies the characters.
OHP/OHT	Transparent sheet used for OHP (overhead projector). Used for a presentation, etc.
OS	Abbreviation for Operating System. Basic software for controlling the system of a computer. Windows, MacOS, and Unix are Operating Systems.
Outline font	A font using lines and curves to display an outline of a character. Large-size characters can be displayed on a screen or printed with no jagged edges

Term	Description	
Overseas communication	This is a function to communicate with an overseas recipient. If an overseas communication mode is set, the fax transmission is sent with a lower speed. Specifying an overseas transmission mode ensures the fax transmission is sent when faxing to the location where transmission conditions are poor, even within the country.	
Password TX	A function for sending a fax with a password. If the recipient's fax machine is set for closed network receptions, the sender's fax machine should transmit a fax with the password same as the closed network reception password.	
PASV	Abbreviation for PASsiVe. A mode for connecting to an FTP server from within a fire- wall. If this mode is not specified, the firewall will be considered inaccessible and the connection will be terminated, preventing the file from being sent.	
Pause	A temporary break in dialing. In this machine, each pause creates a one second break during dialing.	
PB	Push telephone line.	
PC-FAX	A function for sending a fax directly from a computer without using paper.	
PDF	Abbreviation for Portable Document Format. An electronically formatted document which uses the .pdf extension. Based on the Post-Script format, you can use the free Adobe Acrobat Reader software to view documents.	
PDL	Abbreviation for Page Description Language. The language for specifying the print image per page to a printer when printing using a page printer.	
Peer-to-peer	A network format that allows connected devices to communicate without using a dedicated server.	
Pixel	The smallest unit of an image.	
Plug-and-play	Ability to automatically find and use the appropriate driver when a peripheral device is connected to a computer.	
Polling	This is a function for sending a document loaded on the machine or stored in the memory when requested by the recipient.	
Port Number	The number that identifies the transmission port for each process running on a com- puter on the network. The same port cannot be used by multiple processes.	
POP	Abbreviation for Post Office Protocol. A protocol for retrieving E-Mail messages from a mail server. Currently, POP3 (the third version of POP) is most often used.	
POP3	Abbreviation for Post Office Protocol - Version 3. A common transmission protocol (transmission rules) used for the transmission and reception of E-Mail. This has various functions, including mail box authentication, confirmation of E-Mail downloads and list information, and deletion of E-Mails.	
POP Before SMTP Authenti- cation	A user authentication method for sending E-Mail messages. First, the reception op- eration is performed and the user is authenticated by the POP server. Then, IP ad- dresses where the user was successfully authenticated by the POP server are permitted to use the SMTP server. This method prevents third parties without per- mission to use the mail server from sending mail messages.	
PostScript	A typical page-descriptive language developed by Adobe and is commonly used for high quality printing.	
PPD	Abbreviation for PostScript Printer Description. A file used to describe the resolution, usable paper size, and the PostScript printer model special information.	
PPI	Abbreviation for Pixels Per Inch. Unit of resolution mainly used in monitors and scanners. Indicates the number of pixels per inch.	
Preview	A function that allows you to view an image before processing a print or scan job.	
Print Job	Print request transmitted from a computer to a printing device.	
Print queue	A software system which queues the generated print job in the devices.	
Printer buffer	Memory domain temporarily used for data processing of a print job.	
Printer driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a printer.	
Profile	Color attribute file The dedicated file that contains the summarized correlation of the input and output of each primary color used so that the color input and output devices can reproduce the color.	
Program address	This is a function for registering recipient's fax numbers where faxes are frequently sent and received and preset transmission operation procedures. By simply pressing the program key, the address is specified and the communication can be automatically performed with the specified functions.	

Term	Description
Property	Attribute information When using a printer driver, various functions can be specified in the file properties. In the file properties, you can check the attribute information of the file.
Protocol	The rules that allow computers to communicate with other computers or peripheral devices
Proxy server	A server that is installed to act as an intermediary connection between each client and different servers to effectively ensure security over the entire system for Internet connections.
PServer	A printer server module under a NetWare environment. Monitors, changes, pauses, restarts, or cancels a print job.
Queue name	Name specified to each device that allows printing when network printing.
Quick memory transmission	This is the method to start sending a fax transmission by scanning one page of the document at the same time. Even in a case of multiple documents, this function can be used to send the document without straining the memory capability.
RAW port number	The TCP port number used when the RAW protocol is selected for Windows TCP printing. Usually set to 9100.
realm (IPP setting)	Region for performing security functions. This organizes authentication information such as the user name and password, and defines the security rules in the region.
Receiving	This is the condition where the fax machine answers the call.
Redial	This is a function for dialing a fax number again after waiting for a specified length of time, such as when the recipient's line is busy. You can select either to redial manually or to redial automatically the number.
Reference Allowed Level	A feature for specifying settings so that only certain people are able to view certain destination information for the purpose information security. When synchronized with user authentication, only information with an access permission level matching that specified for the user can be viewed.
Referral setting (LDAP setting)	If there is no corresponding data on the LDAP server searched for the destination, specify which LDAP server should be searched next or specify an LDAP server. Specify whether or not the multifunctional product searches this specified LDAP server.
Relay broadcast	This is a function to send the broadcast the fax via other fax (called as a relay distri- bution station). When there are multiple broadcast destinations at distant places, one of the broadcast destination is specified to the relay station and the entire amount of the communication charges can be reduced by doing the relay transmission from the relaying station.
Relay distribution station	A feature to broadcast the fax to the relay distribution destination by receiving the re- lay request from the relay instruction station. The relay distribution function is not available in this machine.
Relay instruction station	The fax machine that sends the relay broadcast request.
Remote RX	A function to issue a directive for receiving a call via an external phone, using a re- mote reception number.
Resending	This function retries sending specific documents stored in the memory, which were not successful sent, to either the same destination or another destination.
Resolution	Displays the ability to reproduce the details of images and print matter correctly.
RIP	Abbreviation for Raster Image Processor. Process that develops picture images from described text data using the PostScript page description language. The processor is usually integrated in the printer.
RGB	Abbreviation for Red, Green, and Blue. Represents all colors by changing the brightness ratio of the three RGB colors using the primary colors used by the color representation in a monitor.
Samba	UNIX server software that uses SMB (Server Message Block) so that UNIX system resources can be used from a Windows environment.
Scan size	This is a function to specify the scanning size of a document and transmitting it. If the width of the paper in the recipient's fax machine is smaller than that of the transmitted document, the fax is normally reduced when it is printed. If you do not wish to reduce the fax, specify a document size that is same as the size of the paper in the recipient's fax machine in order to send the fax at its original size.
Scanning	When the scanning operation is carried out, an image is read with the row of image sensors that gradually move. The direction that the image sensors are moved is called the main scanning direction, and the direction in which the image sensors are arranged is called the sub-scanning direction.
Screen font	A font for displaying text and symbols on a CRT monitor.

Term	Description
Screen frequency	Indicates the density of dots used to create an image.
Sender Name	The name of this machine. This name is printed as a part of the transmission source at the edge of the transmitted document from the recipient's machine.
Sending	Making a call. It is to send a document or to dial for pollings in case of fax.
Shared printer	A printer setup that enables the printer to be used by multiple computers connected to a server over a network.
Sharpness	This function sends a document after enhancing the edge of character.
Single-page TIFF	A single TIFF file that contains only a single page.
SLP	Abbreviation for Service Location Protocol. A protocol capable of finding services over a TCP/IP network and automatically specifying a client.
S/MIME	Abbreviation for Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions. A protocol for adding features such as encryption and digital signatures to MIME (E- Mail operations). With this standard, public key encryption, which uses a different key for encryption and decryption, is used.
SMB	Abbreviation for Server Message Block. A protocol mainly used by Microsoft Win- dows to share files and printers over a network.
SMTP	Abbreviation for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. A protocol for sending and forward- ing E-Mail.
SNMP	Abbreviation for Simple Network Management Protocol. A management protocol in a network environment using TCP/IP.
Spool	Abbreviation for Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On-Line. With this function, printer output data is not sent directly to the printer, but it is tem- porarily stored in another location first, and later sent to the printer in bulk.
SSL/TLS	Abbreviation for Secure Socket Layer/Transport Layer Security. The encoding method for safely transmitting data between the Web server and browser.
Subnet Mask	The unit used to divide a TCP/IP network into small networks (subnetworks). It is used to identify the bits in a network address that are higher than the IP address.
Sub-scanning direction	The vertical direction for scanning documents.
Super G3 (SG3)	This is a G3 communication mode standardized by ITU-T V.34. The communication becomes possible at a higher speed (high speed 33,400 bps) than that of the usual G3 communication.
TCP/IP	Abbreviation for Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. This is the de facto standard Internet protocol. IP addresses are used to identify respective network devices.
TCP Socket	Refers to the network API used with TCP/IP. A transmission route is opened using this socket to input and output normal files.
Temporary document saving	This is a function for automatically saving the received document in the memory when the machine cannot print the received document, such as when the machine has run out of paper. When paper is added, the document that has been temporarily saved is printed.
Temporary Forward transmis- sion	This is a function to manually forward the received document on hold, by using the setting confirmation button of the control panel. The transmission is used when the fax/scan screen is been displayed, or the operation is being stopped due to paper misfeed or running out of paper.
Thumbnail	A small image that shows the contents of an image or document file (the image dis- played when the file is opened).
TIFF	Abbreviation for Tagged Image File Format. One of the file formats for saving image data. (The file extension is ".tif"). Depending on the tag indicating the data type, information for various image formats can be saved in a single image data.
Timer TX	A function for sending a fax at a specified time. Sending faxes at discounted calling times, such as late at night or early in the morning can help to reduce the transmission costs.
Transmission reservation	This is a function to reserve the next transmission while current transmission or print- ing.
Transmission speed	Specifies the transmission speed of modem for fax. In this function, the fax can be communicated at a high transmission speed of 33,600 bps. When overseas communication mode is set, it communicates at a high transmission speed a with a noise of 7200 bps or 4800 bps.

Term	Description
Transmission source record	When a fax has been sent, the transmission time, name, telephone number, page number that is to be printed at the edge of the document saved on the recipient's machine.
Transmission time	The time needed to send a fax. The higher the resolution or larger the paper, the long- er the transmission takes.
TrueType	An outline font. It was developed by Apple Computer and Microsoft. It is used as a standard by Macintosh and Microsoft Windows. It can be used both on a display and in print.
TSI	Abbreviation for Transmitting Subscriber Identification. ID of the fax transmission ter- minal.
TWAIN	The interface standard for imaging devices, such as scanners and digital cameras, and for applications, such as graphics software. In order to use a TWAIN-compliant device, the TWAIN driver is required.
Uninstall	To delete software installed on a computer.
USB	Abbreviation for Universal Serial Bus. A general interface standard for connecting a mouse, printer, and other devices to a computer.
V34	This is a communication mode used at the time of fax communication of super G3. There are cases when the communication is not possible in super G3 mode depending on the telephone line conditions when the recipient's machine/ own machine is connected to a telephone line via private branch exchange. In such cases, it is recommended to communicate with super G3 mode turned off by deselecting the V34.
Web browser	Software for viewing Web pages. Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator are this type of software.
WINS	Abbreviation for Windows Internet Naming Service. A service for recalling name servers for the conversion of computer names and IP address in a Windows environment.
Zone	A name given in an AppleTalk network. This is used to group multiple devices on an AppleTalk network.
Z-Folded Original	This function first confirms the document size which cannot detect correct document size due to folds, then scans and sends the document data after verifying the correct document size. This function can be used only when the document is scanned by ADF.



5 Index

Numerics

2-Sided Print 2-178

Α

Account track 2-124 Account Track Registration 2-127 Active Directory 2-128 Address Book 2-182 Address registration 2-170 Admin. E-mail Address 2-32, 2-60 Administrator mode 2-8, 2-171 Administrator password 2-172 Administrator Settings 3-3 Annotation User Box 2-175, 2-176 APOP Authentication 2-38 AppleTalk 2-89 AppleTalk Settings 3-6 Application 2-199

В

Banner sheet 2-178 Bind Direction 2-178 Bonjour 2-88 Bonjour Setting 3-6 Box tab 2-173 Bulletin Board User Box 2-175 Bulletin User Box 2-176

С

Certificate 2-10, 2-17, 2-18, 2-19 Counter 2-118

D

Date and time 2-22 Default Gateway 2-3 Default Paper Size 2-178 Detail Settings 3-14 Device Mail Address 2-59 Digital signature 2-39 Direct Hosting 2-27 Direct hosting service 2-27 DNS Domain Name 2-3 DNS Host Name 2-3 DNS Host Name 2-3 DNS Server 2-3 Domain 2-132 Download 2-18 DSN Request 2-62 Dynamic DNS 2-3

Е

E-mail *2-29*, *2-39*, *2-42*, *2-111*, *2-187* E-mail Address *2-20* E-mail address *2-203* E-Mail Settings *3-6* Encryption *2-42*, *2-69* Encryption Strength *2-15* Export *2-161* External memory *2-158* External server *2-129*, *2-133*, *2-137*, *2-141*, *2-199*

F

Fax 2-182, 2-187 Flash 2-7 Format All Destination 2-164 FTP 2-52, 2-182, 2-187 FTP server 2-154, 2-157 FTP Settings 3-6

G

Group 2-187 Group destination 2-186

Н

Header Information *2-61* Header/Footer *2-166* HTTP Server Settings *3-6*

Import *2-161* Interface *2-181* Internet Fax *2-182*, *2-187* Internet fax *2-57*, *2-64*, *2-69* IP Address *2-3* IP Address Fax *2-182*, *2-187* IP address fax *2-71* IP address filtering *2-145* IP Application Method *2-3* IPP *2-82* IPPS *2-86* IPsec *2-150* IPv6 *2-147*

L

LDAP 2-45, 2-140 LDAP over SSL 2-50, 2-143 LDAP Settings 3-6 Limiting Access to Destinations 2-125 Login 2-8 Logout 2-171 Low Power mode 2-159 LPD 2-79 LPR 2-78

Μ

MAC Address *2-4* Machine authentication *2-123* Machine Setting *2-60* Maintenance 2-158 Manual conventions 1-4 MDN Request 2-62 MDN Response 2-67 Meter Count 2-122

Ν

NDPS 2-94 NDS 2-136 NetBIOS Name 2-81 NetWare 2-90 NetWare Settings 3-6 Network Fax Settings 3-14 Network Setting Clear 2-162 Network Settings 3-3, 3-6 Network Speed 2-4 NTLM 2-26 NTLM authentication 2-132 NTP 2-24

0

OpenAPI *2-154*, *2-156* Output Tray *2-178*

Ρ

PageScope Web Connection 2-5, 2-8 Paper Tray 2-178 PCL 2-179 PDL 2-178 Permission of Address Change 2-170 POP 2-66 POP before SMTP 2-35 POP over SSL 2-36 Port9100 2-78 Power Save 2-159 Prefix/Suffix 2-203 Printer Setting tab 2-178 Program destination 2-187 Proxy Server 2-53, 2-55 PS 2-180 Public key 2-42, 2-69 Public user 2-169 Punch 2-178

R

RAW port *2-79* Reference allowed group *2-168* Relay User Box *2-175*, *2-176* Reset *2-162*, *2-163* ROM Version *2-167*

S

S/MIME 2-40, 2-43, 2-70 Security 2-168 Sleep mode 2-159 SLP 2-75 SMB 2-80, 2-182, 2-187 SMB Settings 3-6

SMB TX 2-26 SMTP 2-30 SMTP Authentication 2-34 SMTP over SSL 2-33 SMTP RX 2-74 SMTP TX 2-73 SNMP 2-107 SNMP Settings 3-6 SSL 2-10, 2-102, 2-104 SSL using mode 2-16 Staple 2-178 Start TLS 2-33 Store Address tab 2-182 Subject 2-198 Subnet Mask 2-3 Support information 2-165 System box 2-175, 2-176

Т

TCP Socket 2-7, 2-154, 2-155 TCP Socket (ASCII Mode) 2-7 TCP Socket Settings 3-14 TCP/IP 2-3 TCP/IP Settings 3-6 Text 2-199 Time Zone 2-23 Timer 2-159 Total Counter 2-120 TRAP 2-115 TWAIN 2-75

U

User authentication 2-124, 2-130, 2-134, 2-138, 2-142 User Box 2-182, 2-187 User box 2-173, 2-174 User manuals 1-5 User mode 2-171 User Registration 2-125 W Web service 2-97, 2-100 Web Service Settings 3-14 WebDAV 2-54, 2-182, 2-187 WebDAV Client Settings 3-14 WebDAV over SSL 2-56 Weekly Timer 2-160 WINS 2-28 Workgroup 2-81, 2-132 WSD 2-102, 2-104 WSD print 2-96 WSD scan 2-99

X XPS *2-181*